

330

Colloquial Latvian

ble in the Colloquial series:

Arabia	Arabic (Levantine)
Basque	
Bulgarian	
Cambodian	
Cantonese	
Chinese	
Czech	
Danish	
Dutch	
English	
Estonian	
French	
German	
* Greek	
Gujarati	
Hindi	
Hungarian	
Indonesian	
Italian	
Japanese	
Korean	
Latvian	
Lithuanian	
Malay	
Norwegian	
Punjabi	
Persian	
Polish	
Portuguese	
Romanian	
* Russian	
Serbo-Croat	
Slovak	
Slovene	
Somali	
* Spanish	
Spanish of Latin America	
Swedish	
Thai	
Turkish	
Ukrainian	
Vietnamese	
Welsh	

The Complete Course for Beginners

Christopher Moseley

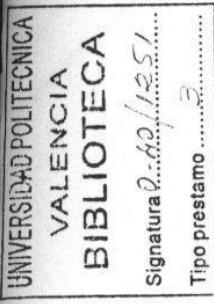
BIBLIOTECA GENERAL
UNIVERSIDAD POLITÉCNICA
VALENCIA



London and New York

Accompanying cassette(s) are available for the above titles.

(2) * Accompanying CDs are also available.



Contents

First published 1996
by Routledge

11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge

29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

© 1996 Christopher Moseley

Typeset in Times Ten by Florencetype Ltd, Stoddleigh, Devon
Printed and bound in England by Clays Ltd, St Ives plc

Illustrations by Matthew Crabbe

The author asserts the moral right to be identified as the author of this
work.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced
or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means,
now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording,
or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in
writing from the publisher.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

Moseley, Christopher.
Colloquial Latvian: a complete language course/Christopher Moseley.
(Colloquial series)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Latvian language – Textbooks for foreign speakers – English.
I. Title.

PG8839.5.E5M67 1996

491'.9382421-dc20 95-44852

ISBN 0-415-11797-6 (book)

ISBN 0-415-11798-4 (cassettes)

ISBN 0-415-11799-2 (book and cassettes course)

1 Rīgas lidosta At Riga airport	9
2 Pa ceļam uz Rīgu On the way to Riga	21
3 Mājas Rīgā At home in Riga	34
4 Rīgas veikalos Shopping in Riga	46
5 Lauku dzīve Country life	58
6 Dzimšanas diena A birthday	73
7 Līgo svētki Midsummer celebrations	84
8 Brauciens ar autobusu A bus journey	94
9 Dzīvojī un mājas Flats and houses	103
10 Ārsta vizīte The doctor comes	113
11 Tirdzus darījumi Business dealings	122

Acknowledgements

12 Sports	Sport	133
13 Brauciens ar riteni	A bicycle trip	140
14 Pusdienas	A dinner	147
15 Brauciens gar krastu	A trip along the coast	153
16 Mūzika un kultūra	Music and culture	163
17 Latvijas masu informācijas līdzekļi	The Latvian mass media	170
18 Jānis meklē savu senču saknes	Jānis seeks his family roots	179
19 Ģimenes pēdējās dienas Latvijā	The family's last days in Latvia	186
20 Atvadīšanās	Farewell	192
Verb conjugations		198
Key to exercises		202
English–Latvian glossary		214
Latvian–English glossary		220
Glossary of grammatical terms		242
Index of language points		246

The patient help of many native Latvians has been vital to me in preparing this book, and I would like to record here my grateful thanks to at least some of them: to Reinis Mertens and Ivans Belevičs for their enthusiastic responses to even my most naive questions; and to Maija Brēde (and Klāvs Sedlēniex) for sound pedagogical advice. Paul Atyeo has provided vital insights from the point of view of the non-native learner; and Simon Bell at Routledge has nursed this project through from start to finish.

Thanks go also to my wife, Kristina, for her forbearance while much midnight oil was burned.
I would like to dedicate this work to the memory of Māra Vilčinskas, who sadly did not live to see the fruition of a project to which she gave warm and vital support in the early stages. I can only hope this book is worthy of the infectious enthusiasm and encouragement she gave it.

I would like to thank my colleagues at the University of Latvia for their support and encouragement during the preparation of this book. Special thanks to the members of the Department of English Language and Literature, the Department of Latvian Language and Literature, and the Department of English Language Studies, and to the students of the Faculty of English Language and Literature, the Faculty of Latvian Language and Literature, and the Faculty of English Language Studies.

I would like to thank my wife, Kristina, for her forbearance while much midnight oil was burned. I would like to thank my colleagues at the University of Latvia for their support and encouragement during the preparation of this book. Special thanks to the members of the Department of English Language and Literature, the Department of Latvian Language and Literature, and the Department of English Language Studies, and to the students of the Faculty of English Language and Literature, the Faculty of Latvian Language and Literature, and the Faculty of English Language Studies.

About this book

This course aims to provide a working knowledge of the contemporary Latvian language. Latvian is one of the two surviving members of the Baltic branch of the Indo-European family of languages. Its closest relative is Lithuanian, the language of Latvia's southern neighbour. The Baltic languages are of great antiquity and therefore of much interest to historians of Indo-European linguistics. At one time there may have been up to ten members of the Baltic branch, but little is known of them: the most recent language in this group to die out was Old Prussian, which was defunct by the end of the seventeenth century.

The Republic of Latvia re-emerged as a sovereign nation as recently as 1991; the three Baltic republics of Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania were the first to declare their independence from the Soviet Union. Like its northern and southern neighbours, Latvia had enjoyed a period of independence earlier this century, from 1918 to 1940, between the two world wars, a period which saw a rapid growth in the country's prosperity to a position to which it is only now returning. In previous centuries, Latvia was, with its northern neighbour Estonia, subsumed under the name of the Duchy of Livonia as part of the Russian empire, and before that under Swedish and Polish rule. In medieval times its territory was conquered and Christianized by the Teutonic Knights from Germany, and their descendants remained until the present century as the educated nobility of 'Livonia'.

All these tides of history are reflected in the present-day Latvian language. Embedded in the Baltic bedrock of the language one can find traces of German, Russian and even Swedish, which serve to give more cosmopolitan character to this old-established tongue of peasants and seafarers. Even in the twentieth century the language has undergone considerable changes: as it shakes off the jargon of fifty years of 'Sovietese', it eagerly embraces the

international terminology of commerce, much of it recognizable to English-speakers.

During the Soviet period the Latvians almost became a minority in their own country, and in the capital, Riga, they were in fact so. Russian came to predominate in most areas of life, and for native Latvians bilingualism became an everyday fact of life. It is for this reason that, since independence, stringent laws have been passed and implemented in Latvia to ensure the primary position of Latvian as the state language of the country. In the last years of the Soviet era, real fears had been expressed that, if existing trends were to continue, the Latvian language would soon die out. Now the language is in a much healthier position. Owing to certain similarities between the structures of the Latvian and Russian languages, and a certain amount of common vocabulary, Latvian linguistic 'purism' has perhaps taken on a more vigilant edge than, say, Estonia, whose language has no genetic affiliation with Russian. Incidentally, the only other language native to Latvia, Livonian, which is now on the point of extinction, is most closely related to Estonian.

After the collapse of Latvia's independence following the Molotov-Ribbentrop Pact of 1939 and the Soviet occupation of 1940, large numbers of Latvians were deported from or fled the country. Consequently, in the post-war years sizeable Latvian communities established themselves abroad, notably in Germany, Sweden, Canada, the United States, Australia and Britain. Throughout the subsequent decades these communities have proudly maintained their country's ancient language and traditions. Many of them are now enjoying the opportunity to revisit their ancestral homeland and re-establish ties with the approximately 2 million Latvians who remained there. Altogether, then, there are perhaps upwards of 3 million native speakers of Latvian in the world today.

Contact between the exile community and the homeland is a thread that runs through the twenty lessons given in this book. In getting to know the Latvian language and people, we follow the fortunes of a family returning to Latvia for the first time from the other side of the world after a whole generation apart. Most of the situations that a newcomer to Latvia will confront are therefore seen through the eyes of both the resident and the visitor, and it is hoped that this approach to the language will help to smooth the path for those who find the terrain unfamiliar at first. Once you try out your own colloquial Latvian, you are sure to find

your Latvian friends and acquaintances will offer lots of help and encouragement in mastering their beautiful and fascinating tongue.

The twenty lessons, then, form a consistent narrative, and are made up of dialogues, vocabulary lists, grammatical explanations, reading passages, 'Language in action' features and a wide variety of other exercises. The lessons are of course graded for difficulty, but the reading passages, which aim to give the reader a taste of the varieties of written Latvian, offer more of a challenge, to whet the learner's appetite for things to come.

If you have the accompanying recordings, you will find the recorded passages marked with a cassette symbol in the book. In using the tapes, don't be afraid to listen over again to anything you are not sure of until you are confident to proceed. Don't be afraid either, to refer frequently to the Glossary at the end of the book, and the ready-reference tables to assist you with some of the more difficult points of grammar.

In writing this course I have consulted several authoritative dictionaries and textbooks, which I would like to mention here:

Dictionaries

- E. Turkina (1982), *Latviešu-Angļu vārdnīca*, Riga: Avots.
Z. Belzēja and others (1977), *English-Latvian Dictionary*, Waverly, Iowa:
National Latvian Publishers.

Textbooks

- T. Budīņa Lazdina (1966), *Teach Yourself Latvian*, London: English Universities Press.
B. Ceplite, L. Ceplitis (1991), *Latviešu valodas praktiķiskā gramatika*, Riga: Zvaigzne.
T. Fennell and H. Gelsen (1979), *A Grammar of Modern Latvian* (3 volumes), The Hague: Mouton.

The sounds of Latvian

The Latvian alphabet consists of thirty-five letters:

P	p	r	s	s̄	t	u	ü	v	z	ž
R	R	S	S̄	T	U	Ü	V	Z	Ž	
H	h	i	i	j	k	k̄	l	m	n	ŋ
I	I	ī	J	K	K̄	L	L̄	M	N	N̄
A	a	ā	b	c	č	d	dz	e	ě	f
Ā	Ā	B	C	C̄	D	D̄	E	F	G	Ḡ

The letters q, w, x and y are not used, even in writing foreign names. The digraphs **Dz**, **dz** (and **Dž**, **dž**) are treated as single letters in Croatian books.

pronunciation

Armenian is pronounced as it is written, and once you learn the alphabet you will have a reliable idea of how each word is pronounced.

vowels

There are six vowels in Latvian, and they can occur in both short and long forms. The long forms are indicated in writing by placing a macron (̄) above the letter.

- a is pronounced like the 'u' in English 'but' (like *a* in most European languages). Example: *ala* 'cave'.

ā is pronounced as in English 'art'. Example: *ātri* 'quickly'.

e is pronounced in two different ways, like the 'e' in 'bed' or like the 'a' in 'cat', depending on the word in question. These are referred to as 'broad' (*platais*) and 'narrow' (*saurais*) respectively. Some rules for determining which way e is pronounced in a word will be given in a later lesson. In the vocabulary lists in the early lessons, 'broad' e will be left unmarked, and 'narrow' e will be indicated by a small hook underneath: ē (This follows the convention used by other Latvian grammarians) Remember that this is only a *pronunciation guide*; it is not used in writing. Examples: es ēsmu 'I am', tū ēsi 'you are'.

ē the same applies to the longer version of e, and will be indicated as such in writing. Examples: redzēt see', krēsls 'chair'.

i is pronounced as in English 'bit', but a little further forward in the mouth with tenser lips: e.g. sirds 'heart'. Thus it is the short equivalent of ī.

ī sounds like the vowel in English 'beat'. Example: sirdi 'in the heart'.

ō is also pronounced in two different ways. In words of older Latvian origin, this vowel is pronounced as a diphthong [uo], almost like the 'wa' in English 'wasp'; in more recent borrowings, it is a monophthong [o], pronounced as in English 'got'. Examples: (long) ožols 'oak', (short) kino 'cinema'.

ū is pronounced as in English 'pull'. Example: pullstens 'clock'.

ū, the longer version of u, is thus pronounced rather like the vowel in 'pool'. Example: pūles 'efforts'.

There are no other true diphthongs in native words; other vowel combinations are the result of adding a prefix to a root, such as **paēst** 'eat (one's fill)', **saiet** 'go together', **Saeima** 'Latvian Parliament'.

Consonants

b, d, f,
l, m, n,
s, v

and **z** are pronounced as in English.
j is pronounced like 'y' in 'yes'; e.g. **jo** 'because'.
c is pronounced like 'ts'. Thus, for example, **cits** 'other' begins and ends with the same sound.
dz is the voiced version of 'c'; e.g. **dzied** 'sings'.

The consonants that have accent marks are all what we might call 'palatalized' sounds, the result of adding a [j] sound to a consonant.

č is like the 'ch' in English 'church'; e.g. **četri** 'four'.
đ is like the 'j' in English 'job'; e.g. **đadži** 'thistles'.
š is like the 'sh' in English 'ship'; e.g. **šis** 'this'.
ž is like the 's' in 'pleasure'; e.g. **žurka** 'rat'.
ļ is like **l + j**, pronounced with the tongue arched further towards the palate than with **l** (hence the name 'palatalized') to make a single sound, like the 'lli' in 'million'; e.g. **ļoti** 'very'.
ņ is likewise a combination of **n + j**, as a single sound, like the 'ni' in English 'onion'; e.g. **ņem**! 'take!'.
k is not like any sound in English, but most closely resembles the [tj] sound in 'Tuesday' or 'cut you'; e.g. **ķer!** 'catch!'!
ģ is the voiced equivalent (produced with the vocal cords vibrating) of **k**, a bit like the [dʒ] sound in 'due'; e.g. **ģimene** 'family'.
r is pronounced with a moderate trill (two or three flaps of the tongue); e.g. **redz** 'sees'!
p, t and **k** are pronounced without the initial puff of air (aspiration) so often heard at the beginning of English words; e.g. **putns** 'bird', **ķakis** 'cat', **tas** 'it'.

¹ Up to 1945 there was an additional letter in Latvian, **r** (**r + i**), but this was abolished by the Soviet authorities, and there are no plans at present to restore it. It is still to be found in some Latvian books printed abroad, but in Latvia it is written and pronounced as **r**.

When they occur between two short vowels, unvoiced consonants such as **p, t** and **k** tend to be lengthened to almost double length: hence **aka** 'well' sounds like [akka], **bite** 'bee' sounds like [bitte], **upe** 'river' sounds like [uppe].

The sounds **f** and **h** are not native to Latvian, and are only found in recent borrowings. Sometimes **h** is pronounced [x] like the 'ch' in 'loch', and it was formerly written as **ch** as well.

If one consonant in a cluster is palatalized, so is the one that follows it: e.g. **celš** 'road', **ķirt** 'separate'.

Syllabic consonants

Latvian differs from many other European languages in having voiced 'sonorant' consonants that can constitute a syllable in themselves. The consonants **l, n** and **r** are sonorant and can be syllabic. They never occur in a stressed position (that is, in the first syllable), and usually they are part of a cluster that ends in the masculine nominative ending **-s**. Examples: **putns** 'bird', **stikls** 'glass', **gudrs** 'wise'. With other case endings, these consonants are of course not syllabic: e.g. **putnu** 'bird' (acc.), **stiklā** 'in the glass', **gudra** 'wise' (gen.). (Originally there would have been a vowel between the consonant that has become syllabic and the final **-s** in Latvian. Its much more conservative sister language, Lithuanian, has preserved this vowel: for example, in Lithuanian, 'glass' is **stiklas** and 'clever' is **gudrūs**.)

Stress

Stress always occurs on the first syllable of a word (except in a few words which are actually contractions of longer phrases), even if this syllable is a prefix. Remember that stress and length in Latvian are quite independent of each other. Any syllable can be long, but only the first syllable can be stressed. Examples: **kāpt** 'climb', **izkāpt** 'climb out', **upe** 'river', **upē** 'in a/the river', **mašīna** 'car', **mašīnā** 'in a/the car'.

Voiced and unvoiced consonants

Latvian is pronounced very much as it is written, and every letter

is sounded, but if a voiced consonant precedes an unvoiced one, it loses its voicing. Compare *spožs* 'glossy' (m.) but *spoža* (f.); *sirds* 'heart' (nom.) but *sirdi* 'in the heart'; *goviš* 'cow' but *goviši* 'cows'. The reverse is also true: an unvoiced consonant becomes voiced before a voiced one: e.g. *apziņa* 'consciousness', *nesdzams* 'carrying', *cūkgāja* 'pork'.

1 Rīgas lidostā

At Riga airport

Pronunciation exercise

Using the guidelines above, try pronouncing the following words:

zirgs	horse	zirgi	horses
lācis	bear	lāči	bears
kakis	cat	kaki	cats
bulis	bull	buļļi	bulls
goviš	cow	goviši	cows
cikla	pig	cūkas	pigs
putns	bird	putni	birds
mežs	forest	meži	forests
trolsnis	noise	trokšņi	noises
roka	hand	rotas	hands
ola	egg	olās	eggs
pinksts	finger	pirkti	fingers
akmens	stone	akmeni	stones
pasaulē	world	pasaules	worlds
diena	day	diennas	days
kugs	ship	kuģi	ships
slēdzis	switch	slēdzi	switches
ceļš	road	celi	roads
rotala	game	rotalas	games
dziesma	song	dziesmas	songs
aka	well	akas	wells
upe	river	upes	rivers
bite	bee	bites	bees
bloda	dish	blodas	dishes
nazis	knife	nazi	knives
svece	candle	sveces	candles
zvērs	beast	zvēri	beasts
tornis	tower	torqi	towers
mirklis	moment	mirkli	moments

By the end of this lesson you should know:

- some greetings and forms of address
- about the Latvian noun case system
- about the present tense of verbs
- about number and gender in nouns and adjectives
- how to ask questions

Dialogue 1

Arriving at the airport

Jānis Kalējs, his wife Baiba, their son Imants and daughter Dzidra have just arrived at the airport in Riga, the capital of Latvia. They have flown all the way from Australia to visit the country where Jānis and Baiba were born. This is their children's first visit to Latvia. The first person they meet is, of course, the immigration officer

OFFICER: Labdien! Jūs pases, lūdzu!
JĀNIS: Seit ir visas mūsu pases: mana pase, mana dēla pase, manas meitas pase. Kur ir tava pase, Baiba?

BAIBA: Seit.
OFFICER: Paldies. Vai jūs esat pirmo reizi Latvijā?

JĀNIS: Mana ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā, bet es esmu dzimis tepat Rīgā.
OFFICER: Uz cik ilgu laiku Latvijā?

JĀNIS: Apmēram četrus nedēļas.
(The officer stamps their passport.)
OFFICER: Lūdzu, jūs pases. Laimīgi!
JĀNIS: Paldies.

(Note: for the first few lessons translations of the dialogues will be provided to help you.)

OFFICER: *Good day! Your passports, please!*

JĀNIS: *Good day! Here are all our passports: my passport, my son's passport, my daughter's passport. Where is your passport, Baiba?*

BAIBA:

OFFICER: *Thanks. Is this your first time in Latvia?*
JĀNIS: *My family is in Latvia for the first time, but I was born right here in Riga.*

OFFICER: *How long (are you) in Latvia?*

JĀNIS: *About four weeks.*

OFFICER: *Here you are, your passports. Good luck!*
JĀNIS: *Thanks.*

Vocabulary

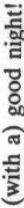
pirma	the first (f.)	paldies	thank you (introduces a question)
lekcija	lesson	vai	this (t.)
Rīga	capital of Latvia	ši	time, occasion
Rīga's, of Riga	Riga's, of Riga	reize	for the first time
lidoša-	airport	pirma reizi	Latvia
saruna	conversation	Latvija	in Latvia
labdien	hello! good day!	gimene	family
jusu	your (pl., polite)	bet	but
pase	passport	I	I
pases	passports	esmu	am
lūdz	please; here you are	dzimis	born (m.)
seit	here	tepat	right here
ir	is, are	Rīga	in Riga
visas	all (f.)	uz	for
mīsu	our	cik	how (of quantities: how much, how long, etc.)
mana	of my (m.); my (f.)		
dēls	son		
dēla	son's	ilgs	long
manas	of my (f.)	laiks	time (also 'weather')
meita	daughter	īlu laiku	long time
meitas	daughter's	(acc.)	
kur	where	apmēram	about
tava	your (sg., familiar, f.)		

Vocabulary

pirma	the first (f.)	paldies	thank you (introduces a question)
lekcija	lesson	vai	this (t.)
Rīga	capital of Latvia	ši	time, occasion
Rīga's, of Riga	Riga's, of Riga	reize	for the first time
lidoša-	airport	pirma reizi	Latvia
saruna	conversation	Latvija	in Latvia
labdien	hello! good day!	gimene	family
jusu	your (pl., polite)	bet	but
pase	passport	I	I
pases	passports	esmu	am
lūdz	please; here you are	dzimis	born (m.)
seit	here	tepat	right here
ir	is, are	Rīga	in Riga
visas	all (f.)	uz	for
mīsu	our	cik	how (of quantities: how much, how long, etc.)
mana	of my (m.); my (f.)		
dēls	son		
dēla	son's	ilgs	long
manas	of my (f.)	laiks	time (also 'weather')
meita	daughter	īlu laiku	long time
meitas	daughter's	(acc.)	
kur	where	apmēram	about
tava	your (sg., familiar, f.)		

(In these two words the stress falls on the second syllable.)

Greetings



In the dialogue we found these expressions:
labdien, meaning 'good day', is a greeting that Latvians use at any time in the daytime. At more specific times of the day they might say:
labrit!
labyakar!
ar labu nakti! (with a) good night!

Gender

All nouns, names and adjectives in Latvian are declined according to *gender*. They may be *masculine* (m.) or *feminine* (f.). As there are several cases in which these words are declined, we have to bear in mind the gender of the word we are using. In Latvian, adjectives agree with nouns in *gender, number* (singular (sg.) or plural (pl.)), and *case*; that is, they take corresponding forms. You can usually tell easily whether a Latvian noun is masculine or feminine. The masculine ending for nouns is nearly always -**s** or -**is**, and the feminine is -**a** or -**e**, in the *nominative case*, as given in the vocabulary lists. (Gender will not be shown in these lists

unless the word is an exception to this rule.) For adjectives, the nominative endings are *always* -s for the masculine (except for a few words ending in -ē) and -a for the feminine. (The masculine form will be shown in vocabulary lists.) Here are the nouns we learned in our first dialogue, divided according to gender.

Feminine	Masculine
pase	passport
meita	dēls
reize	laiks
gimene	son
nedēja	time
saruna	family
	week
	conversation

But notice that gender endings apply to names as well. Jānis Kalējs is masculine, and his wife is Baiba Kalēja: even the ending of her surname is feminine. Their son is Imants and their daughter Dzidra, each name having the characteristic gender ending. Latvija is itself feminine – as are most place-names.

Number: the plural

Nouns and adjectives have characteristic plural forms which agree as well. For masculine nouns, the ending is usually -i, and for feminine nouns, -as or -es.

For adjectives, the endings are always -i for the masculine, -as for the feminine. This applies to numbers as well:

četras laimīgas meitās
četri laimīgi dēli

four happy daughters
four happy sons

Cases

There are six cases in Latvian, and these are used to express the state or position of numbers, names, nouns and adjectives. We will be looking at these cases in more detail in future lessons, but for the present let us see what these cases actually do.

The *nominative*, as we have seen, expresses the subject of the sentence: the doer of an action, or the subject of the verb ‘to be’. The *nominative* is the form given in the word lists.

The *accusative* expresses the direct object of an action, such as ‘you’ in the sentence ‘I see you’. In Latvian it is also found in some time expressions, such as **pirmo reizi** ‘for the first time’.

The *genitive* case expresses possession or belonging: ‘Baiba’s passport’, ‘the family’s holiday’, ‘the airport of the city’.

The *dative* case expresses the notion indicated by ‘to’ or ‘for’ in English.

The *locative* case, as its name implies, expresses location. It has broadly the function of the prepositions ‘in’ or ‘at’ in English. We found a couple of examples in the dialogue: Rīga ‘in Riga’, Latvija ‘in Latvia’. It can also refer to time, as ‘in’ can in English: vasara ‘in summer’, vakara ‘in the evening’.

The *vocative* case is used for addressing people, and in some instances it has the same form as the nominative, as we saw in the dialogue:

Kur ir tava pase, Baiba?

Where is your passport, Baiba?

Latvian grammarians also recognize another case, the *instrumental*, which expresses the means ‘by’ which something is done. This case differs from the others in having no distinctive ending of its own and being used with the preposition ar ‘with’. Ar governs the accusative case in the singular and the dative in the plural. Therefore the instrumental will not be given in declensions.

We shall look at these cases at greater length in later lessons. With this range of cases, Latvian does not need to make as much use of prepositions as English does, but Latvian does have quite a range of prepositions too, all of which govern particular cases: that is, they influence the case of the noun that follows them.

Present tense of the verb būt ‘to be’

The verb **būt** ‘to be’ is irregular, and is conjugated in the present tense like this:

I am	es esmu
you are (sg, familiar)	tu esi
he is	viņš ir
she is	viņa ir
it is (m/f.)	tas/tā ir
we are	mēs esam
you are (pl, polite)	jūs esat
they are (m/f.)	viņi/viņas ir
they are (non-human, m/f.)	tie/tās ir

Forms of address

Like many other European nations, Latvians distinguish between familiar and polite ways of addressing each other. **Tu** is used for family members, children and close friends; **jūs** is used for more formal relations with those adults who are less familiar. (If it refers to a single person in the polite form, it is written with a capital **J**: **Jūs**, for example in letter-writing.)

Dialogue 2

A Family reunion

Having passed through passport and customs control, the Kalejs family enters the airport terminal. There to meet them is Jānis' brother Imants and his wife Aija. Jānis and Gunārs have not seen each other for many years, but they recognize each other immediately.

GUUNĀRS: Sveiki! Eiset sveicināti Latvijā!

IMANTS: Labdien, Gunār! Labdien, Aija! Beidzot esam Latvijā!

GUUNĀRS: Un šī ir mana ģimene: mama sieva Baiba, mans dēls Imants, mama meita Dzidra.

AJĀ: Eiset sveicināti! Vai bēni arī prot latviski?

GUUNĀRS: Jā, vini prot mazliet latviski, vai ne, Dzidra?

GUUNĀRS: Es saprotu, ja jūs runājat lēni.

IMANTS: Labi, labi! Runāsim tad visi latviski! Ejam tad ārā un braucam mājās!

GUUNĀRS: Šodien ir skaista un silta vasaras diena, un spīd saule.

IMANTS: Bet pie mums Austrālijā ir ziema.

Hello, hello! Welcome to Latvia!

GUUNĀRS: Good day, Gunārs! Good day, Aija! We're finally in Latvia! And this is my family: my wife Baiba, my son Imants and my daughter Dzidra.

GUUNĀRS: Welcome! Do the children know Latvian too?

IMANTS: Yes, they know a little Latvian, don't you, Dzidra?

GUUNĀRS: I understand if you speak slowly.

GUUNĀRS: Good, good! Then let's all speak Latvian! Let's go outside and drive home.

GUUNĀRS: Today is a beautiful and warm summer day, and the sun's shining.

GUUNĀRS: But at home in Australia it's winter.

Vocabulary

sveiki!	hello!	tad	then
eiset sveicināti!	(be) welcome!	viši	all, everyone
sveicināt	greet, welcome	iet	go (on foot)
beidzot	finally, at last	ejam	we go, let's go
un	and	ārā	outside
sieva	wife	brankt	travel, go (by vehicle)
bērns	child	mājis	home (also: uz mājam)
ari	also, too	šodien	today
prast	know (how), speak (a language)	skaitis	beautiful
	a little	silti	warm
mazliet	(in) Latvian (language)	vasara	summer
latviski	yes	diena	day
	don't you?	spīdēt	shine
	understand if	saule	sun
	they	pie	to, at (the home of)
	speaks	mums (dat. case) us	to/at our place;
	slowly	pie mums	in our country
	good, well	Austrālija	Australia
	let's speak	ziema	winter

Language points

More greetings

sveiki! or sveiks!
esiet sveicināti!
esiet sveicinātī!

The vocative case

The vocative case (see page 13), used for addressing people, is the same as the nominative for feminine names and nouns, but masculine words drop the final **-s**: Gunārs is addressed as **Gunār**, Jānis as **Jāni** and so on.

Asking questions

If we place **Vai** before a statement we turn it into a question:
Ai bērni prot latviski. The children know Latvian too.
Vai ari bērni prot latviski? Do the children know Latvian too?

Vai ne is added as a ‘tag question’ after a statement to ask for agreement: ‘isn’t it?’, ‘don’t you?’ and so on:

Vini prot mazlēt latviski, vai ne?

They know a little Latvian, don’t they?

Other question-words: **kur** ‘where’, **kad** ‘when’, **kas** ‘who/what’, **kāpēc** ‘why’.

The verb

The form of the verb shown in the word lists is the *infinitive*: ‘to speak’, ‘to shine’ and so on. Many of the verbs in Latvian follow a conjugation pattern where the infinitive ends in either **-āt**, **-ēt**, **-īt**, **-ot** or **-īlt**. Quite a few others end in a consonant + **t**. But many of the more common verbs don’t follow this regular pattern. Latvian grammarians traditionally divide the verb conjugations into types and subtypes. For the present we will simply note that the conjugations fall into three basic types: *long* (with the infinitive endings described above), *mixed* and *short*. For more detail about verb conjugations you can refer to the verb tables at the end of the book. Apart from these conjugation types, there are only three *irregular verbs*. We have already met one irregular verb: **būt** ‘to be’, which is also an auxiliary verb. The other two are **dot** ‘give’ and **iet** ‘go’ (see below).

One example of the long conjugation is **runāt**, ‘to speak’:

es runāju	I speak
tu runā	you speak
vīši/vīja runā	he/she speaks
mēs runājam	we speak
jūs runājat	you speak
vīpi/vīpas runā	they speak

Spīdēt ‘to shine’, is an example of the mixed conjugation: **spīdu**, **spīdi**, **spīdam**, **spīdat**, **spīd**.

The ‘irregular’ verbs will have to be learned separately, but even here the endings are much the same as with ‘regular’ verbs. One that occurred in the dialogue was **iet ‘go’**. Compare its present-tense conjugation with the only other truly irregular verb, **dot ‘give’**:

es ēju	I go	es dodu	I give
tu ēj	you go	tu dod	you give
vīši/vīja īet	he/she goes	vīpi/vīja dod	he/she gives
mēs ējam	we go	mēs dodam	we give
jūs ējat	you go	jūs dodat	you give
vīpi/vīpas īet	they go	vīpi/vīnas dod	they give

Two parallel examples of the short conjugation are **prast ‘know now’** and **saprast ‘understand’**:

es protu	es saprotu
tu proti	tu saproti
vīši/vīja prot	vīpi/vīja saprot
mēs protam	mēs saprotam
jūs protat	jūs saprotat
vīni/vīnas prot	vīni/vīnas saprot

Notice how the vowel in the stem of the verb changes in these verbs.

For all verbs the singular and plural third-person forms ('he/she' and 'they') are identical.

Adverbs

Adverbs are formed by changing the gender-based ending of the adjective to **-i**:

lēns ‘slow’ – **lēni** ‘slowly’ (also **lēnām**);
latvisks ‘Latvian’ – **latviski** ‘in Latvian’ (note the lower-case I);
skāists ‘beautiful’ – **skāistī** ‘beautifully’;
labs ‘good’ – **labi** ‘well’.

Some have the ending **-u**: **vēlu** ‘late’, **tālu** ‘far’.

The genitive singular of feminine nouns

An interesting parallel between Latvian and English is that Latvian feminine nouns form their plurals by adding *-s*, and the genitive singular in the same way:

gimene 'family' – **gimenes** 'families' or 'family's'; **gimenes pases**

'the family's passports';

vasara 'summer'; **vasaras** 'summers' or 'summer's'; **vasaras diena**

'summer's day'

Note that in Latvian the possessor (in the genitive case) always precedes the possessed object: **manā dēļa pase** 'my son's passport', **manas meitās pase** 'my daughter's passport'. Note also that there are no articles in Latvian: **vasaras diena** can mean 'a summer's day' or 'the summer's day'.

'Let's'

Gunārs suggested in the dialogue:

Runāsim tad visi latviski! Then let's all speak Latvian!

To express the first-person plural imperative in Latvian ('let's'), we use the future tense of the verb. We will deal with the future tense in more detail later; for the present just note that it is also used where in English we say 'let's'.

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks:

- 1 (I) protu latviski.
- 2 Tu (*know*) angiski ('English').
- 3 Vini (*know*) latviski.
- 4 Mēs (*know*) angiski.
- 5 Viņš (*You*) protat latviski.
- 6 Viņš (*goes*) ārā.
- 7 Es (*go*) mājās.
- 8 Vina (*speaks*) lēti.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 My family and I are in Latvia for the first time.
- 2 Let's speak Latvian!
- 3 We are at Riga airport.
- 4 They are going outside.
- 5 We are travelling home.
- 6 The sun is shining.
- 7 They are travelling slowly.
- 8 I understand Latvian if you speak slowly.

Exercise 3

Turn these statements into questions:

- 1 Baiba prot angļiski.
- 2 Mēs braucam uz mājām.
- 3 Jāni, ūdens ir skaista diena.
- 4 Dzidra, tu proti mazliet latviski.
- 5 Bērni brauc uz mājām.
- 6 Jūs esat dzīmis šeit.
- 7 Pie jums ir ziema.
- 8 Jūsu ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā.

Exercise 4

Insert the correct endings:

- 1 Pie mums ir skaist diena; vai pie Jums saule spīd spož (*brightly*)?
- 2 Mūsu ģimene pase ir šeit.
- 3 Baiba run latvisk loti lēn .
- 4 Jāni , vai tu prot anglik ?
- 5 Austrālij ir ziemā, bet šeit Latvij ir vasara.
- 6 Vai Jūs es pirm reiz Rig .
- 7 Es sveicināt pie mums!
- 8 Labdien, Gunār ! Beidzot esam Latvij !

Reading passage

At Riga airport

Kalēju ģimene – tēvs Jānis, māte Baiba, dēls Imans un meita Dzidra – ir Rīgas lidostā. Pasu darbinieks saka: 'Jūsu pases, lūdzu'

un Jānis dod pases. Ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā, bet Jānis ir dzīmis šeit, Rīgā. Lidostā viņus gaida tēva brālis Gunārs un viņa sieva Aija.

Additional vocabulary

tēvs	father	saka	says
māte	mother	dot	give
pasu	(gen. pl. of pase)	dod	gives
kontrole	checking, control	vīnus	them (acc.)
darbinieks	official	gaidīt	wait
sacīt	say	brālis	brother
		vīna	his

Questions

(Note: Latvian uses the same word for both 'who' and 'what': **kas** in the nominative and **ko** in the accusative.)

- 1 Kur ir Kalēju ģimene?
- 2 Ko lūdz pasu kontroles darbinieks?
- 3 Vai viņi ir otro reizi Latvijā?
- 4 Kas viņus gaida lidosta?
- 5 Kas ir Gunāra sieva?

2 Pa ceļam uz Rīgu

On the way to Riga

By the end of this lesson you should know about:

- prepositions and noun cases
- how to form the accusative, genitive and dative cases
- how to make commands
- negative verbs, adjectives and adverbs
- cardinal numbers
- 'to have' in Latvian
- how to express definiteness and indefiniteness

Dialogue 1

Travelling home

The Kalējs family travels by car from Riga airport to their relatives' home near the centre of the city

BAIBA: Vai jūs dzīvojat tālu no lidostas?

GUNĀRS: Jā, diezgan tālu. Mūsu dzīvoklis nav tālu no Daugavas upes krasta.

DZIDRA: Skaties, tagad mēs braucam pa Rīgas ielām. Vai tā ir Vecrīga?

GUNĀRS: Nē, vēl neesam Rīgas centrā. Vēcrīga ir netālu no pilsētas centra, kas ir Daugavas labajā malā.

BAIBA: Un cik ilgi mēs brauksim?

GUNĀRS: Apmēram divdesmit piecas minūtes vai pusstundu.

AJĀ: Bet skatieties! Trolejbusi! Jums laikam nav tādu Austrālijā!

IMANTS: Nē, ari tādu ķiku nav, kā šeit! Kāds dzīvoklis jums ir?

GUNĀRS: Mums ir vienkāršs, neliels dzīvoklis. Tas ir diezgan vēcs,

- bet ērīs, un mums ir lielisks skats no dzīvokļa uz Daugavu.
- BAIBA:** Do you live far from the airport?
- GUNĀRS:** Yes, quite far. Our flat is not far from the bank of the Daugava (river).
- DZIDRA:** Look, now we're driving along the streets of Riga. Is that Old Riga?
- GUNĀRS:** No, we're not in the centre of Riga yet. Old Riga is not far from the centre of town, which is on the right bank of the Daugava.
- BAIBA:** And how long will we be travelling?
- AUJA:** About twenty-five minutes or half an hour.
- IMANTS:** No, and we don't have buildings like (the ones) here!
- GUNĀRS:** What kind of flat do you have?
- IMANTS:** We have a simple little flat. It's quite old, but comfortable, and we have a great view from the flat to the Daugava.

trolejbuss	trolleybus	nieviels
laikam	probably	dīzgan
šāds	such (as this)	ērīs
tāds	such (as that)	lielisks
kāds	what kind of	great
čka	building	view
vienkāršs	simple	

Language points

More about prepositions and noun cases

Latvian prepositions correspond in their use fairly approximately to English prepositions ('on', 'for', 'about' and so forth). But the Latvian system of noun cases means that, on the one hand, cases do some of the work that prepositions do in English, as we have already seen (*Rīga* 'in Riga'), and on the other, the prepositions themselves govern particular noun cases. In the title of this dialogue, *Pa ceļam uz Rīgu* 'On the way to Riga', *ceļam* is the dative case of *ceļš* 'way' (which is one of a few masculine nouns that end in *š* rather than *s*), and *Rīgu* is the accusative form of *Rīga*, governed by *uz*, which here means 'to'. (When *uz* means 'on', it governs another case, the genitive.) Elsewhere in the passage we find other prepositions, each governing a particular case; **no dzīvokļa** 'from the flat' appears with the genitive case. Prepositions may govern either the genitive, the accusative or the dative case.

The form of the accusative singular

For both masculine nouns ending in *-s/-š* and feminine nouns ending in *-a*, the accusative singular ending (for the direct object of a verb or preposition) is the same: **u.**

Riga	Rīga
Latvija	Latviju
tēvs	tēvu
Baiba	Baibu
meita	meitu
Gunārs	Gunāru
	(stunda 'hour')

This applies to nearly all the nouns and names we have learned so

Vocabulary

pa (+ dat.)	along	vecs	old	Riga
ceļš (m.)	road, way	Vērīga	Old Riga (the Old Town of Riga)	
uz (+ acc.)	to, onto	līdz	no	
dzīvot	live	vel	yet, still	
tālu	far	nesam	we are not	
no (+ gen.)	from	pilsēta	town, city	
dīzgan	enough, quite	centrs	centre	
dzīvoklis	flat, apartment	metālu	not far	
nav	(there) is/are not	labais	right (labajā 'on the right')	
Daugava	(the river on which Riga stands)	mala	edge, shore	
		brauksim	we will travel/drive	
upe	river	divdesmit	twenty	
krasts	shore, bank	pieci/piecas	five	
skafīties	look	minūte	minute	
skatīties/-ties!	look!	vai	or	
mēs	we	pussfunda	half an hour	
tagad	now			
pa (+ acc.)	along, by			

far. For feminine nouns ending in **-e**, such as **gīmene**, the ending for the accusative singular is **-i**: **gīmēni**.

The form of the genitive singular

The genitive (possessive) ending for feminine nouns and names ending in a vowel is **-s**, as we have seen: **Baības, gīmēnes, pāses** and so on. For masculine nouns ending in **-š** the ending is **-a**:

ceļš	cela
tēvs	tēva
krasts	krasta

The imperative singular and plural

Skaties!

Look! (sg.)

Skatieties!
Look! (pl.)

The command form of the verb in Latvian differs depending on whether one or more people are being addressed. With all verbs, the imperative singular is the same as the *second-person singular* of the verb (**tu dod** 'you give'; **dod!** 'give!'; **tu nāc** 'you come'; **nāc!** 'come!').

The imperative plural is formed from the *second-person plural* of the present tense by dropping the final **-ai/-āt** and substituting **-iet**: **jūs dodat** 'you give'; **dodiet!** 'give!'; **jūs runājat** 'you speak'; **runājiet!** 'speak!'

Skaties! 'to look' is a reflexive verb. Reflexive verbs usually, but not always, indicate actions that refer back to the subject – oneself. We shall look at reflexive verbs in more detail later, but the principles for forming the imperative of reflexive verbs are exactly the same, with the reflexive element added on: **skafies!/skatieties!** 'look!', compare **ej!/ejiet!** 'go!' Quite often in spoken and written colloquial Latvian, however,

you will find the plural forms in **-at**(ies) being used as the imperative instead of **-iet**(ies). For the sake of clarity, though, it is best to observe the distinction.

The negative verb

The negative form of the verb is simple to construct; we simply put **ne-** in front of the verb:

es nēsmu	I am not
tu nerēdzi	you don't see
vins neskaitās	he's not looking

and so on. The only exception to this rule is the negative form of **ir** 'he/she/it is', which is **nav** 'he/she/it isn't'. (We will learn more about the use of **nav** later on.)

Negative adjectives and adverbs

You will see from some examples in the text (**netālu** 'not far', **nelielis** 'small, not big') that even some adjectives and adverbs can be negated with the prefix **ne-**.

Cardinal numbers 1–10

The cardinal numbers from 1 to 9 have both masculine and feminine forms, which agree with the adjectives and nouns they qualify. The forms given here are in the *nominative* case; the numbers 1–9 (and all combinations ending in them) behave like adjectives in Latvian, and can take other case endings, which we will learn later.

	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>
1	viena	viens
2	divas	divi
3	trīs	trīs
4	četras	četri
5	piecas	pieci
6	sešas	seši
7	septinas	septini
8	astomas	astoni
9	deviņas	deviņi
10	desmit	desmit

For the numbers from 2 to 9, then, the rule is simple: masculine numbers end in **-i** and feminine in **-as**, except **trīs**, where the forms are identical. **Desmit** '10' is indeclinable and has no gender, and it behaves like a collective noun, taking the genitive plural form of the noun it qualifies. Look at these examples:

Man ir septiņi gadi.	I am seven years old.
years)	years)

Man ir desmit gadu. I am ten years old.

Demonstrative adjectives

The words for 'this', 'that', 'what kind of and so on behave like adjectives in Latvian; they are declined according to gender, number and case. For the present, let's just learn their nominative singular forms:

	Masculine	Feminine
this	šis	šī
that	tas	tā
what kind of	kāds	kāda
that kind of	tāds	tāda
this kind of	šāds	šāda

In conversation we can also say šītās and šītā for 'this'.

The dative case

The dative case expresses the idea 'to' or 'for' a person or thing. The characteristic endings for the dative singular are -am for masculine nouns ending in -s, -ai for feminine nouns ending in -a, and -ei for those ending in -e in the nominative:

Gunāram	to/for Gunārs
Baibai	to/for Baiba
tevam	to/for father
mātei	to/for mother

The dative cases of the personal pronouns are:

man	to/for me
tev	to/for you
viņam	to/for him
viņai	to/for her
tam/tai	to/for it (m./f.)
mums	to/for us
jums	to/for you
viņiem/viņām	to/for them (animate)
tiem/tiām	to/for them (inanimate)

But the dative case has another important function too, as we'll see in the next section.

'To have'

Mums ir vienkāršs, neliels dzīvoklis.

We have a simple little flat.

There is no verb in Latvian equivalent to the English verb 'to have'. Instead we use the dative case of the possessor with the appropriate form of the verb 'to be': in the present tense, **ir**. With the pronouns it will be:

man ir	I have	mums ir	we have
tev ir	you have	jums ir	you have
viņam ir	he has	viņiem/viņām ir	they have
viņai ir	she has		

What is possessed appears in the nominative case. Thus if we want to say 'Gūnārs has a car' we say **Gunāram ir mašīna**. And 'he has a car' will therefore be: **Viņam ir mašīna**.

Exercise 1

Negate these sentences:

- 1 Mēs braucam uz Rigu.
- 2 Imants redz autobusu.
- 3 Dzīvoklis ir tālu no centra. (2 possibilities)
- 4 No dzīvokļa vini var redzēt Daugavu.
- 5 Jūs braucat pa Vecrigu.
- 6 Viņš iet pie mums.
- 7 Es eju ārā.
- 8 Es saprotu latviski.

Exercise 2

How do you say in Latvian:

- 1 six passports
- 2 three mothers
- 3 eight sons
- 4 seven trolleybuses
- 5 two families
- 6 four daughters

- 7 nine rivers
 8 five minutes
- Exercise 3**
- Translate:
- 1 Baiba has an old father.
 - 2 Gunārs' family has a small flat.
 - 3 My wife has a comfortable chair (**křesls**).
 - 4 We have two young (**jaunas**) daughters.
 - 5 He has a new passport.
 - 6 They have an old car.
 - 7 You (pl.) have a great view.
 - 8 Dzidra has a small family.

Exercise 4

Change the above sentences on the model:

1 Baiba's father is old.

Exercise 5

Fill in the missing words in these sentences, adjusting the endings to agree in gender where necessary:

- 1 Viņa mašīna ir neērta.
- 2 Baibas dzīvoklis _____ nav _____.
- 3 _____ bagāža nav _____.
- 4 _____ nav _____ liels.
- 5 Gunāra _____ mašīna ir _____.
- 6 _____ visi (pl.) _____ lielisks.
- 7 _____ nogurusi (m. pl.) _____.

Dialogue 2

We're home!

Gunārs and Aija have brought the Kalējs family home to their flat in a suburb of Riga

29

GUNĀRS: Mēs ķēdam pie mums! Es nesu jūsu bagāžu iekšā.

BAIBA: Paldies! Mēs visi ēsam loti nogurūsi pēc ilgā ceļojuma. Bērni, šī ir tā pati adrese, uz kuru mēs ēsam tik ilgus gadus rakstījuši vēstules no Austrālijas!

DZIDRA: Jā, tik tiešām! Bet onkul, vai jums ir dārzs?

GUNĀRS: Nē, diemžel dārza mums nav, tikai balkons. Tikai mājai var būt dārzs, bet mēs dzivojam dzīvokli. Taču tuvumā ir liels parks, un tur jūs varat spēlēties.

DZIDRA: Vai mēs varam iet tūlit ārā?

GUNĀRS: Nē, tikai rīt. Tagad pāēsim, un tad jūs visi laikam gribēsīt gulēt.

GUNĀRS: We're here! Welcome to our home! I'm taking your luggage in.

BAIBA: Thanks! We're all very tired after the long trip. Children, this is the same address that we've been writing letters to from Australia all these long years!

DZIDRA: Yes, so it is! But uncle, do you have a garden?

GUNĀRS: No, unfortunately we don't have a garden, just a balcony. Only a house can have a garden, and we live in a flat. But nearby there's a big park, and you can play there.

DZIDRA: Can we go outside straight away?

GUNĀRS: No, only tomorrow. Now we'll have something to eat, and then you probably all want to sleep.

Vocabulary

ķēlat	present, arrived, there	ceļojums	journey
lapni līdzam	welcome (lapnis)	tā pati (t.)	the same
nest	'kind'; see līdzin, lesson 1)	adresē	address
bagāža	carry	uz kurieni	(to) where
iekšā	luggage	tik	so, such
visi (pl.)	inside	rakstīt	write
nogurusi (m. pl.)	all	rakstījuši (m. pl.)	written (past participle)
pēc (+ gen.)	tired (past participle)	vēstule	letter
īgs	after	tik tiesām	yes indeed
	long	onkulis	uncle (or tēvočis)

UNIVERSIDAD POLITÉCNICA
VALENCIA

dārzs	garden	spēlēties tūlit	play (ref.) immediately, straight away
diemželī	unfortunately		
tikai	only		
balkons	balcony	rīt	tomorrow
mīja	house	paēdīsim	we'll (have something to)
tācu	but, yet		
varēt	can, be able		
tuvumā	nearby (tuvums = 'vicinity')	laikam	eat (infin. paest)
parks	park	gribēt	probably
tur	there	gulēt	want sleep

Language points

The past active participle

Esam visi joti nogurūši. We are all very tired.

Nogurūši

Nogurūši is the *past active participle* of the verb *nogurt* 'get tired'. Unlike the English participle 'tired', however, the Latvian past participle changes its ending according to gender, number and case. There are four forms of the past active participle, and what we find here is the *masculine plural* form of the participle ending in *-usī*. (Masculine plural forms are used when the genders referred to are mixed.) We find another example of this participle further on in the passage:

... mēs esam tik līgus gadus rakstījusi vēstules no Austrālijas,
... we have been writing letters for so many ('such long') years from Australia.

The other forms are masculine singular *-is*; feminine singular *-usi*; feminine plural *-usas*.

The definite form of the adjective

We have already noted that Latvian has no definite article, no word for 'the', and no indefinite article 'a/an' either. But it does have ways of expressing definiteness and indefiniteness, just like most languages. The Latvian way of showing definiteness is unusual, and is shared with its sister language Lithuanian: it applies only to adjectives (and other qualifying words, such as ordinal numerals

and possessive pronouns, which we will look at later). The form of the adjective will change according to whether we want to say 'a beautiful river' or 'the beautiful river', 'a comfortable flat' or 'the comfortable flat'. 'A beautiful river' and 'a comfortable flat' are, in the nominative, *skaista upē* and *ērtās dzīvoklis*. But the endings of the adjectives change if we make them definite: *skaista upē* and *ērtās dzīvoklis*. In other cases than the nominative, the definite endings are parallel to the indefinite, but with alterations to the vowels; we will examine the definite forms for the other cases in later lessons.

If we gave Latvian names to these first two lessons, we would call them *pirmā lekcija* and *otrā lekcija* 'the first lesson' and 'the second lesson'. *Lekcija* 'lesson' is feminine, and therefore 'the first' and 'the second' appear as *pirmā* and *otrā*.

In the dialogue, Baiba said they were all very tired 'after the long journey', *pēc ilgā braucienā*. Here we see the *genitive* (mascu-line) form of the definite adjective (governed by the preposition *pēc*), which is simply a longer version of the indefinite form *īlga*.

Classifying verb conjugations

In lesson 1 we saw that the infinitive (dictionary) forms of Latvian verbs all end in *-t*, with the majority falling into groups that end in *-āt*, *-ēt* or *-īt*. Some of the more irregular ones have no vowel before the final *-t* in the infinitive. It is possible to divide Latvian verbs up into various numbered classes, but we will not try to classify them in the lessons; for reference purposes you can find a table of them at the end of the book. It might be useful here, though, to set out the present-tense forms of several of the common new verbs introduced in this dialogue, because they show some of the differences in the ways the verbs behave. Look at these conjugations carefully:

	'can'	'want'	'eat'	'sleep'
varēt	gribēt	ēst	gulēt	
es	varu	gribu	ēdu	gulu
tu	vari	gribi	ēd	guli
vinš/viņa	var	grib	ēd	guļ
mēs	varam	gribam	ēdam	gulam
jūs	varat	gribat	ēdat	gulat
viņi	var	grib	ēd	guļ

Note the palatalization of **l** in the forms of **gulēt** 'sleep'.
The pronunciation of **e** also varies in **ēst** 'to eat'.

Exercise 6

Translate:

- 1 The child is sleeping after the long journey.
- 2 Uncle carries the luggage inside.
- 3 They are eating, and then they can sleep.
- 4 The family has arrived, but they are all quite tired.
- 5 You (sg.) can play tomorrow. Now go (to) sleep!
- 6 But I want to play straight away!
- 7 No, not until (= only) tomorrow; then you can play (pl.).
- 8 It is a long journey from Australia to Latvia. ('From Australia to Latvia is a long journey.')

Exercise 7

How would you say the following in Latvian?

- 1 the great view
- 2 the small garden
- 3 the old uncle
- 4 the beautiful mother
- 5 the comfortable car
- 6 the big river
- 7 the little building
- 8 the long week

Vocabulary

celojums	journey
tante	aunt
sakt	begin
lašīt	read
pasaka	fairy-tale
virs	man
lācis	bear
lapsa	fox

pēc	after
lappuse	page
abi	both
aizmigt	fall asleep
dziļš	deep
salds	sweet
mīlegs	sleepy

Reading passage

End of the day

Bērni ir ļoti noguruši savā pirmajā vakarā Latvijā. Viniem bija loti ilgs celojums no Austrālijas. Kad vini iet gulēt, tante Aija sāk viniem lašīt latviešu pasaku par viru, lāci un lapsu. Bet jau pēc pirmās lappuses abi bērni ir aizmiguši dzījā un saldā miegā.

3 Mājās Rīgā

At home in Riga

35

By the end of this lesson you should know about:

- more numbers, and how to tell the time
- nouns ending in **-is**
- sound changes in the noun stem
- plural nouns
- how to say 'here' and 'there'; 'something' and 'someone'

Dialogue 1

At breakfast

It is the morning of the Kalējs family's first full day in Latvia. Gunārs and Aija have prepared breakfast for them

GUNĀRS: Labrit! Vai tā jūs esat gulējuši labi?

DZIDRA: Jā, loti labi un ilgi.

GUNĀRS: Brokastis ir jau gatavas. Lūdzu, nāciet pie galda un ēdisim! Pulkstenis jau ir devinī.

DZIDRA: Padies! Kas ir brokastis?

AJA: Te ir olas, dējas, baltmaize un rupjmaize. Jums bērniem ir sula, un mēs dzeram tēju un kafiju. Baiba, vai tu labprāt dzer kafiju brokastis?

BAIBA: Jā, paldies, un ari Jānis to dzer.

AJA: Nēmiet, lūdzu. Kā vēl trūkst? Sviests, piens un siers! Parasti mēs ēdam tikai sviestmaizes un dzeram teju vai kafiju. Bet šodien ir īpaša diena!

IMANTS: Kas tā par sulu?

AJA: Tā ir āboli sula. Mēs paši gatavojam sulu no saviem āboliem.

GUNĀRS: Jā, mana māsa dzīvo laukos, un viņai ir ābeldārzs. Viņa dod mums ābolus no savām ābelēm.

DZIDRA: Brīnišķīgi! Vai mēs brauksim pie viņiem ciemos?

GUNĀRS: Jā, protams, pēc dažām dienām! Viņa jūs gaida!

GUNĀRS: Good morning! Have you slept well?

DZIDRA: Yes, very well, and a long time.

GUNĀRS: Breakfast is ready. Please come to the table and let's eat! It's already nine o'clock.

DZIDRA: Thanks! What's for breakfast?

AJA: Here are eggs, sausages, white bread and brown bread. For you children there's juice, and we're drinking tea and coffee. Baiba, do you like drinking coffee at breakfast?

BABIA: Yes, thanks, and Jānis drinks it too.

AJA: Help yourselves, please! What's still missing? Butter, milk and cheese! We usually eat just sandwiches (or: bread and butter) and drink tea and coffee. But today's a special day!

IMANTS: What kind of juice is this?

AJA: It's apple juice. We make the juice ourselves from our own apples.

GUNĀRS: Yes, my sister lives in the country, and she has an apple-orchard. She gives us apples from her trees.

DZIDRA: Wonderful! Will we be going to visit her?

GUNĀRS: Yes, of course, in a few days' time. She's expecting you!

Vocabulary

gulējuši	slept (past participle, pl.)	maize	bread
ilgi	long (time, adverb)	baltmaize	white bread (balts 'white')
brokastis	breakfast	rupjmaize	rye bread (rupjš 'coarse')
(f. pl.)		sula	juice
gatavs	ready	tēja	tea
galdi	table	kafija	coffee
pulkstenis	clock (with a numeral: 'o'clock')	labprāt	willingly, liking to
		dert	drink
		trūkt	be missing
		egg	(irregular; trūkst 'is missing')
ola		desa	sausage

ņemt	take (ņemiet 'help yourselves')	gatavot	make, prepare
sviests	butter	laukos	in the country
piens	milk	ābeļdārzs	apple-orchard
siers	cheese	(ābele 'apple-tree')	(ābele 'apple-tree')
sviestmaize	sandwich, bread	brīnišķigs	wonderful
	and butter	(braukt)	(go) visiting
ipāss	special	cīmētos	
ābols	apple	dāžs, pl. dāži	some, a few
pāsi	(our)selves	protams	of course
says	(one's, my, your, our, etc.) own		

Other multiples of 10 are formed in the same way as 20:

30 trīsdesmit
40 četrdesmit
50 piecdesmit

Masculine nouns ending in -is

A number of masculine nouns end in **-is** rather than just **-s**, and they are declined slightly differently. **Pulkstenis** 'clock' is one of them. Other examples are **pilsonis** 'citizen', **mākonis** 'cloud', **kakis** 'cat', **zakis** 'hare'. **Pulkstenis** is declined like this in the singular:

nom.	pulkstenis
acc.	pulksteni
gen.	pulksteņa
loc.	pulksteni
dat.	pulkstēnim

Pay special attention to the genitive form, **pulksteņa**. If a single consonant preceding the **-is** is not already palatalized (see Pronunciation, page 6), then it will become so in the genitive.

Telling the time; numbers above 10

Pulkstenis ir jau deviņi. It's already nine o'clock.

Answering the question **cikos** 'at what time' is fairly straightforward in Latvian. We already know the numbers 1-10, but in order to tell the time we need to know how to form numbers beyond that. The numbers from 11 to 20 are:

11 vienpadsmit
12 divpadsmit (usually pronounced diwpadsmit)
13 tričpadsmit
14 četrpadsmit
15 piecpadsmit
16 sešpadsmit
17 septiņpadsmit
18 astoņpadsmit
19 deviņpadsmit
20 divdesmit (usually pronounced diwdesmit)

Other multiples of 10 are formed in the same way as 20:

30 trīsdesmit
40 četrdesmit
50 piecdesmit

and so on. Compound numbers are formed by simply adding the number as a separate word:

35 trīsdesmit pieci
47 četrdesmit septiņi
86 astoņdesmit seši

'Hundred' is **saints**.

To say 'the time is ...' in Latvian we use the phrase **Pulkstenis ir ...** 'What is the time?' is **Cik (ir) pulkstenis?**:

Cik pulkstenis? Divi. What is the time? Two o'clock.

'At' a precise hour is expressed with **(pulkstenis +)** the number in the locative plural, which ends in **-os**. 'At what time' is **cikos**:

Cikos jūs ejat uz darbu? (Pulksten) astoņos.

At what time do you go to work? At eight o'clock.

For exact half-hours we add **pus-** 'half' to the number. Note that in Latvian 'half past' is expressed as half of the *next* hour:

Pulkstenis ir pusdeviņi.

The time is half past eight. ('half nine')

'Quarter' is **ceturksnis**, and this is how we express quarter-hours:

Ir ceturksnis pāri sešiem. It is a quarter past six.

But more commonly people simply say **piecpadsmit** 'fifteen' for 'quarter'.

Note the use of the preposition **pāri** (+ dat. pl.) for 'past'. Knowing this, we can now form other clock-times 'past' the hour:
divdesmit trīs minūtes pāri diviem
 twenty-three minutes past two
Ir sešpadsmit minūtes pāri četriem
 It's sixteen minutes past four.

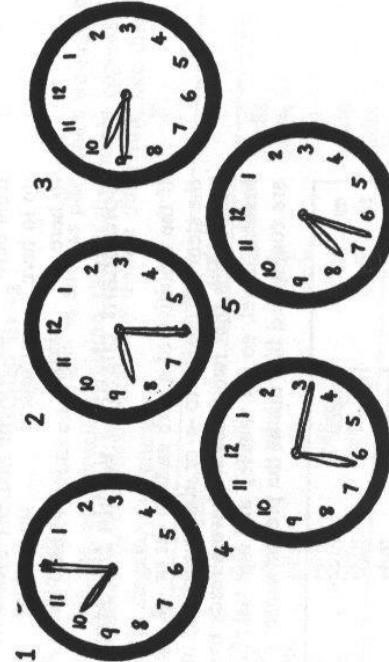
(Note also: **pāri vieniem** 'past one', **pāri trijiem** 'past three')
 Lastly, minutes 'to' the hour are expressed as the next hour 'without' (**bez** + dat. pl.) the number of minutes, in this way:

bez divdesmit četrām minūtēm pieci
 twenty-four minutes to five
bez vienadsmit minūtiem divpadsmit
 eleven minutes to twelve

(With singular words, however, **bez** takes the genitive: **bez vienai** minūtiem 'one minute to'; **bez ceturtām vienai** 'a quarter to one'.)

Exercise 1

Write in words the clock times shown on these clock faces:



- 2 Ko jūs dzerat brokastīs?
- 3 Cikos jūs ēdat brokastis?
- 4 Cikos jūs ejat uz skolu/darbu?
- 5 Cikos jūs ejat mājas no skolas/darbā?
- 6 Cik tagad ir pulkstenis?

Dialogue 2

Looking around Riga

The family starts preparing to spend a day touring Riga

- BAIBA: Ir laiks iet! Bet vispirms, vai es tev varu palīdzēt virtuvē, Aija?
- AIA: Nē, tev ir atvalinājums! Ārā ir skaists, saulains laiks, tāpēc iesim ārai epazīties ar pilsētu. Rīgār tilk daudz, ko redzēt!
- DZIDRA: Vai mēs brauksim ar autobusu?
- GUNĀRS: No šejienes mēs varam braukt ar tramvaju uz centru.
- IMANTS: Labi! Es gribu braukt ar tramvaju!
- GUNĀRS: Bet vai ir kaut kas, ko jūs iepāsi gribat darīt Rīgā, Jāni un Baiba?
- BAIBA: Es gribu redzēt Rīgas centru, vecās un jaunās ķekas, veikalus un parkus.
- JĀNIS: Ārī mani interesē veikali, bet visvairāk gribu pastaigāties pa Rīgu un redzēt vecas ķekas Vecrīgā. Esmu mantojis no mūsu tēva interesi par pagātni un Latvijas vēsturi.
- GUNĀRS: Tas ir labi, jo es gribu tev vēlāk radīt Siguldas seno pilīkas ir Isa brauciena attālumā no Rīgas, kā tu jau zini. Tagad braucam uz pilšētu!
- BAIBA: *It's time to go outside! But first, can I help you in the kitchen, Aija?*
- AIA: *No, you're on holiday! It's beautiful sunny weather outside, so we'll go out and get familiar with the town. There's so much in Riga to see!*
- DZIDRA: *Will we be going by bus?*
- GUNĀRS: *From here we can go by tram to the centre.*
- IMANTS: *Good! I want to travel on a tram!*
- GUNĀRS: *But is there anything you especially want to do in Riga, Jānis and Baiba?*
- BAIBA: *I want to see the centre of Riga, the old and new buildings, the shops and parks.*

Answer these questions in your own way.

- Ko jūs ēdat brokastīs?

JĀNIS: I'm interested in the shops too, but most of all I want to walk through Riga and see the old buildings in Old Riga. I've inherited from our father an interest in the past and Latvia's history.

GUNĀRS: That's good, because later I want to show you the ancient Sigulda castle, which is a short journey away from Riga, as you already know. But now, let's go to town!

Vocabulary

laiks	time; weather	jauns	new
vispirms	first of all	intereset	interest
pālpītēt (+ dat.)	help	visvairāk	most of all
virtuve	kitchen	pastaigaties	walk, stroll
atvainājums	holiday	mantot	inherit
saulains	sunny	interese	interest
iepazīties (ar)	get familiar (with), get to know	par	for, about (here: 'in')
daudz	much	pāgātne	the past
ko redzēt	to see	vēsture	history
šejiene	here (no šejiens 'from here')	vēlāk	later
kaut kas	anything, some- thing (only kas is declined)	rādīt	show
īpaši	especially	sens	ancient
dait	do	Signalda	small town and castle near Riga
veikals	shop	pils (f.)	castle
		iss	short
		braucens	trip
		attālums	distance
		zināt	know

We have already seen that **kas** means both 'who' and 'what' in Latvian, as both an interrogative and a relative pronoun. This word preceded by **kaut**, means 'something'. **Kaut** is not declined, but **kas** is declined like this:

nom.	kas
acc.	ko
gen.	kā (but this is not used as a relative pronoun)
dat.	kam

There is no proper locative case of **kas**, unless we include **kur** 'where'. 'Somewhere' is **kaut kur**. 'Some kind of' is **kaut kāds**; **kāds** is declinable. 'Someone' is **kāds**.

'Here' and 'there'

The indeclinable adverbs **šeit** and **tur** are used to mean 'here' and 'there' respectively, where no movement is implied. If we wish to say 'from here', 'to there' and so on, we must use different locutions, the most common of which are:

from here	no šejiens	from there	no turienes
up to here	uz šejieni	up to there	uz turieni
to here	šurp	to there	turp

Consonant changes within the stem

If the infinitive of a verb ends in **-kt** or **-gt**, the final **-k-** or **-g-** of the stem will change to **-c-** or **-dz-** respectively in the present tense. This means that two verbs we have already met in certain forms, **brauktu** 'travel, go (by vehicle)' and **lūgt** 'ask, beg' (**lūdzu** 'please') are conjugated like this in the present tense:

es	braucu	lūdu
tu	brauc	lūdz
viņš/viņa	braucam	lūdzam
mēs	braucat	lūdzat
jūs	brauc	lūdz
viņi/viņas		

Language points

'Something', 'someone'

In the dialogue, Gunārs asked Jānis and Baiba
Vai ir kaut kas, ko īpaši gribat darīt Rīgā?
 Is there anything you especially want to do in Riga?

We shall be meeting this change of stem consonant later in other connections too.

Plural declensions of masculine and feminine nouns

We already know how to form the nominative plural of the majority of nouns: masculine nouns ending in -s and feminine nouns ending in a vowel. Here is how most nouns decline in full in the plural:

	<i>veikali</i> (m.) 'shops'	<i>lietas</i> (f.) 'things'	<i>pilsētas</i> (f.) 'towns'
nom.	<i>veikali</i>	<i>lietas</i>	<i>pilsētas</i>
acc.	<i>veikalus</i>	<i>lietas</i>	<i>pilsētas</i>
gen.	<i>veikau</i>	<i>lietu</i>	<i>pilsētu</i>
dat.	<i>veikaliem</i>	<i>lietām</i>	<i>pilsētām</i>
loc.	<i>veikaloš</i>	<i>lietās</i>	<i>pilsētās</i>

Note the similarities between nominative and accusative forms in the feminine and between the genders in the genitive plural.

Feminine nouns ending in -s

A small class of nouns ending in -s, such as *pils*, which we find in the dialogue, are actually feminine, though they might appear to be masculine. This means that they decline differently, like these in the singular and plural:

	<i>pils</i> 'castle'	<i>sirds</i> 'heart'
nom.	<i>pils</i>	<i>sirds</i>
acc.	<i>pili</i>	<i>sirdi</i>
gen.	<i>pils</i>	<i>sirds</i>
dat.	<i>pilij</i>	<i>sirdij</i>
loc.	<i>pili</i>	<i>sirdi</i>

Note that the forms of the nominative and genitive singular are identical.

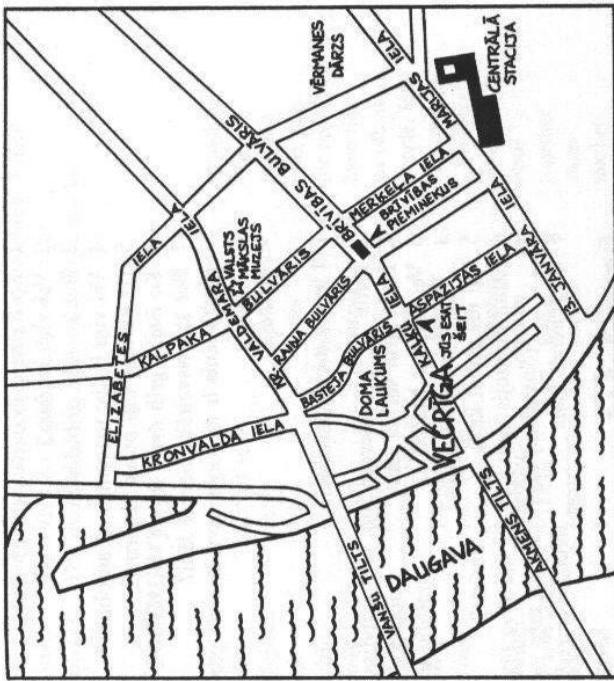
Prepositions and plural nouns

In the dialogue, Jānis said:

Esmu mantojis no mūsu tēva interesi par pagātni un Latvijas vēsturi.

I've inherited from our father an interest in the past and Latvia's history.

Notice here the cases governed by the preposition *par*. In the singular, *par* takes the accusative case (*vēsturi*), but in the plural, *all prepositions govern the dative case*, as here (*senām lietām*). Prepositions only govern different cases in the singular.



Language in action

Below is a list of places shown on the map of Riga. Imagine you are standing at the point indicated on the map, and explain to a stranger how to get from 'here' to each of them. You may need

We shall be meeting this change of stem consonant later in other connections too.

Plural declensions of masculine and feminine nouns

We already know how to form the nominative plural of the majority of nouns: masculine nouns ending in -s and feminine nouns ending in a vowel. Here is how most nouns decline in full in the plural:

<i>veikali</i> (m.) 'shops'	<i>lietas</i> (f.) 'things'	<i>pilsētas</i> (f.) 'towns'
om. veikali	lietas	pilsētas
c. yeikalus	lietas	pilsētas
n. veikalu	lietu	pilsētu
t. veikalim	lietām	pilsētām
veikalo	lietā	pilsētā

Note the similarities between nominative and accusative forms in the feminine and between the genders in the genitive plural.

Feminine nouns ending in -s

A small class of nouns ending in **s**, such as **pils**, which we find in the dialogue, are actually feminine, though they might appear to be masculine. This means that they decline differently, like these in the singular and plural.

<i>pils</i> 'castle'	<i>sirds</i> 'heart'
pils	sirds
pili	sirdi
pils	sirds
pili	sirdi

Note that the forms of the nominative and genitive singular are identical.

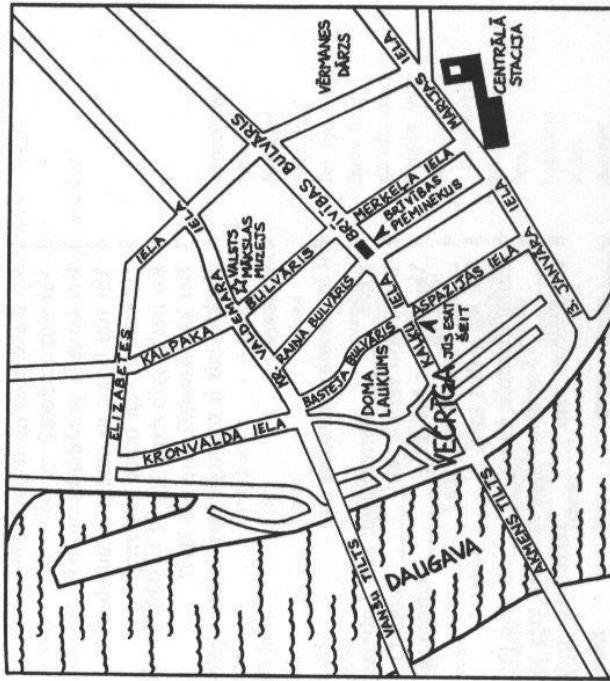
Prepositions and plural nouns

Central Park 11

Esmu mantojis no mūsu tēva interesi par pagātni un Latvijas

I've inherited from our father an interest in the past and Latvia's history.

Notice here the cases governed by the preposition **par**. In the singular, **par** takes the accusative case (*věstíři*), but in the plural, *all prepositions govern the dative case*, as here (*senářům lietám*). Prepositions only govern different cases in the singular.



Language in action

extra vocabulary, which you will find in the English-Latvian glossary at the end of the book. Make liberal use of prepositions such as **uz**, **no** and any others you know. Here's the list of places to get to:

- 1 Brīvības piemineklis (Freedom Monument)
- 2 Valsts mākslas muzejs (National Art Gallery)
- 3 Doma laukums (Cathedral Square)
- 4 Akmens tilts (Stone Bridge)
- 5 Centrālā stacija (Central Station)

Exercise 3

Answer these questions about the dialogue:

- 1 Ko Baiba grib darīt virtuvē?
- 2 Vai viņa to dara?
- 3 Bet ko Aija grib darīt?
- 4 Vai viņi brauc uz centru ar autobusu?
- 5 Uz kurieni viņi brauc vispirms?
- 6 Ko Baiba grib darīt Rīgā?
- 7 Bet kas visvairāk interesē Jāni?
- 8 No kā Jānis ir mantojis savu interesu par pagātni?

Exercise 4

Fill in the missing words:

- 1 Kaut _____ interesē Jāni; tā ir Latvijas vēsture.
- 2 Baiba grib varbūt kaut _____ nopirk.
- 3 Vai viņi var braukt ar _____ autobusu?
- 4 _____ ir laba ēstgriba?
- 5 Vai jūs gribat kaut _____ redzēt?
- 6 Esmu mantojis kaut _____ no sava tēva.
- 7 _____ (Someone) man saka, ka mēs varam iet ārā.
- 8 No šejiennes kaut _____ tāumā var redzēt pilsētu.

Exercise 5

Put the objects of the prepositions into the plural:

- 1 Vini brauc uz senu pilsētu.
- 2 Vini nāk no tālas zemes (= 'land').
- 3 Brokastis ir uz galda.

- 4 Vina iet pa Rīgas ielu.
- 5 Viņš runā par kādu lietu.
- 6 Baiba iet uz veikaluu.
- 7 Vini ēd brokastis kopā (= 'together') ar savu brāli.
- 8 Meitenes brauc ar trolejbusu.

Reading passage

At breakfast

Ir saulaina diena, un Kalēju ģimene ir labi un ilgi gulējusi. Tagad viņi grib iet ārā un apskatīt Rīgu, bet vispirms ir laiks ēsti brokastis. Gunārs un Alja lūdz viņus pie galda, un viņi nāk. Uz galda ir rupjmaize, baltmaize, olas, desas, sviests un siers. Pieaugušie dzer teju un kafiju, bet bērni – sulu. Pēc tam viņi runā par to, ko darīs pilsētā. Bērni grib braukt ar trolejbusu uz centru, Baiba grib iet uz veikaliem, bet Jāni un arī viņa brāli Gunāru visvairāk interesē senas ķekas.

Note about punctuation: most punctuation in Latvian is much the same as in English, but you should note that the dash – is used where unnecessary repetition is omitted, usually of a verb. The sentence could have read **Pieaugušie dzer teju un kafiju, bet bērni dzer sulu** ('The adults drink tea and coffee, but the children drink juice'), but **dzer** is omitted as unnecessary repetition.

From now on the 'broad' and 'narrow' e/ē will no longer be marked. Don't worry unduly about the difference, as not all Latvians make the distinction anyway. But as a general rule, we can say that the e/ē is broad if the only other vowels in the basic form of the word are e or i. Otherwise, the e/ē may be broad or narrow.

4 Rīgas veikalos

Shopping in Riga

47

Dialogue 1

Exploring Riga

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- word order
- the comparative degree of the adjective
- the past and future tenses of verbs
- the subjunctive mood of verbs and how to say 'if...'
- nouns ending in **-us**
- compound and diminutive nouns

Dialogue 1

Exploring Riga

The Kalējs family has been shown around Riga by their hosts. Now they are deciding where to go next

GUNĀRS: Nu jau esam apskatījusi daudzus veikalus. Varbūt jūs jau esat noguruši. Iesim uz kādu kafejnīcu! Es zinu labu kafejnīcu tuvumā.

BAIBA: Labi, esmu jau sapirkusi daudz vairāk, nekā domāju, un tā ir tikai mūsu pirmā diena. Es solju aizvest dažus suvenīrus no Rīgas saviem latviešu draugiem Austrālijā. Es dabūju šokolādi!

GUNĀRS: Arī tu, Imants, esi kaut ko nopircis! IMANTS: Es dabūju šokolādi!

DZINDRA: Tu dabūji šokolādi, bet es dabūju skaitu jaunu apoci! AI: Ai, cik tā ir jauku! Bet Baiba, tu vēl neko neesi nopirkusi sev.

BAIBA: Vēl nepaspēju aiziet uz tautas dairrades veikalu. Gribu sev nopirkt dzintara krelles.

JĀNIS: Tad iesim kopā pēc kafejnīcas!
GUNĀRS: Jā, un tad es gribētu jums parādīt Rīgas tirgu!

GUNĀRS: Well, we've already been to many shops. Perhaps you're tired by now. Let's go to a café! I know a good café nearby.

BAIBA: Good, I've already bought much more than I thought (I would), and this is only our first day. But I promised to buy some souvenirs from Riga for my Latvian friends in Australia.

GUNĀRS: You've bought something too, Imants!

IMANTS:

I got chocolate! You got chocolate, but I got a beautiful new bracelet! Oh, how nice it is! But Baiba, you haven't bought anything for yourself yet.

BAIBA: I haven't had time yet to go off to the folk handicraft shop. I want to buy myself some amber beads.

JĀNIS: Then let's go together after the café!

GUNĀRS: Yes, and I'd like to show you Riga market!

Vocabulary

varbūt	perhaps	šokolāde	chocolate
kāds	(here) some	jauns	new
kafejnīca	café	aproce	bracelet
zināt	know	jaunks	nice, fine
sapirkst	buy, purchase	sev	for (your)self
vairāk	more	paspēt	have time
nekā	than	aiziet	go off, away
domāt	think, intend	tanta	people, folk
solit	promise	dairrade	art, creation, handicrafts
aizvest	take (away, back)	dzintars	amber
		ķrelle	bead
		latviešu (adj.)	together
		draugs	show
		nopirkst	market
		dabūt	get

Language points

A note about word order

Latvian word order is much freer than English, and therefore you should not be surprised to find variations on the normal word order that Latvian shares with English, which is basically subject-verb-object. Sometimes, for reasons of style or emphasis, elements of the sentence can be shifted away from this pattern; for example, in the dialogue we found:

Ari tu, Iman!, esī kaut ko nopircis.

You've bought something too, Imants.

where the participle **nopircis** 'bought' was shifted to the end – something we cannot do in English.

The comparative degree of the adjective and adverb

Esmu jau nopirkusi daudz vairāk, nekā domāju.

I've already bought much more than I thought (I would).

Vairāk 'more' is the *comparative* degree of **daudz** 'much'. The usual way to form the comparative ('more') degree of the adjective is to add **-āk-** to the stem (in this case the stem is irregular). This applies to both adjectives and adverbs. The *adverbial* form adds nothing to this syllable, **-āk**; whereas the *adjectival* form takes the normal adjectival endings. In comparisons, 'than' is expressed by the word **nekā**. Here are some examples:

Runā lēnāk!

Speak more slowly!

Gundega ir skaistāka meitene nekā Dace.

Gundega is a more beautiful girl than Dace.

Nāciet tuvāk!

Come closer!

Šodien ir siltāka diena nekā vakar.

Today is a warmer day than yesterday.

Riga ir interesantāka pilsēta nekā gaidīju.

Riga is a more interesting city than I expected.

The past tense

The formation of the past tense in Latvian is quite straightforward. Those verbs (always of at least two syllables) whose infinitive ends in **-āt**, **-ēt**, **-īt**, **-ot** and **-ūt** drop the **-t** and add the following past-tense endings to that long vowel: **-ju**, **-ji**, **-ja**, **-jāt**, **-jā**. This can be seen from the following examples:

es	domāju	spēju	solju	dzīvoju	dabūju
tu	domāji	spēji	solji	dzīvoji	dabūji
viņš	domāja	spēja	soljja	dzīvoja	dabūja
mēs	domājām	spējam	soljām	dzīvojām	dabūjām
jūs	domājāt	spējat	soljāt	dzīvojāt	dabūjāt
viņi	domāja	spēja	soljja	dzīvoja	dabūja

For all other verbs, that is, the short verbs with an infinitive of one syllable ending in **-t**, and the irregular verbs **būt**, **dot** and **iet**, add the following endings to the stem of the past tense:

es	biju	devu	gāju
tu	biji	devi	gāji
viņš	bija	deva	gāja
mēs	bijām	devām	gājām
jūs	bijāt	devāt	gājāt
viņi	bija	deva	gāja

As you see from these examples, the past-tense endings are quite regular; it is only the stem itself that is irregular. In due course we shall learn how to find the stem of the past tense of the short verbs. The verb table at the end of the book will also help you.

The subjunctive/conditional: 'should/would'

In the dialogue, Gunārs said:

Es gribētu jums parādīt Rīgas tirgu.

I would like to show you Riga market.

The 'would' in this sentence is expressed by simply adding **-u** to the infinitive of the verb **gribēt** 'want'. This rule applies to all verbs without exception, and to all persons of the verb: the conjugation is invariable. It also applies to both the condition (**ja** 'if') and the result ('... then'). Here are some examples:

Es būtu priecīgs, ja jūs nāktu kopā ar mums.
I would be pleased if you came with us.

Vai jūs gribētu iet uz veikalui?

Would you like ('want') to go to the shop?
Jā, es ietu labprāt.
Yes, I would gladly go.

Ja mums būtu vairāk laika, tad mēs redzētu vēl vairāk.
If we had more time, then we would see still more.
Es ietu labprāt.

If we had more time, then we would see still more.
Ja mums būtu vairāk laika, tad mēs redzētu vēl vairāk.
If we had more time, then we would see still more.

Nouns ending in -us

A small group of nouns, mostly masculine, ends in **-us** in the nominative, and has a slightly different declension from other masculine nouns. **Tirgus** 'market' is one of them:

Singular	Plural
nom. tirgus	tirgi
acc. tirgu	tirgus
gen. tirgus	tirgu
dat. tirgum	tirgiem
loc. tirgū	tirgos

Other common nouns of this type include **alus** 'beer', **medus** 'honey', **lieetus** 'rain', **ledus** 'ice'. Generally these nouns are 'uncountable', so their plural forms are seldom used.

Exercise 1

Put these sentences into the past tense:

- 1 Es eju uz tirgu.
- 2 Mēs esam Rīgas tirgu.
- 3 Imants dabū šokolādi.
- 4 Vīnam ir jauna mašīna.
- 5 Saule spīd spoži (= 'brightly').
- 6 Jūs dzīvojat dzīvoklī.
- 7 Mēs nepaspējam aiziet uz veikalui.
- 8 Es tev apsoliju nopirkt šokolādi.

Exercise 2

Put the same sentences into the subjunctive.

Dialogue 2

In a café

The family are sitting in a Riga café with their hosts, discussing what they have seen. They order refreshments from the waitress.

GUNĀRS:	Lūdzu, trīs tases tējas un vienu kafiju.
OFICIANTE:	Ko vēl?
BAIBA:	Varbut es pamemšu arī magonmaizi. Bet bērniem – nu, ko jūs gribat?
DZIDRA:	Apelsinu sulu!
IMANTS:	Es gribu karstu šokolādi.
OFICIANTE:	Diemžēļ mums nav.
IMANTS:	Tad limonādi.
GUNĀRS:	Nu, Jāni, ko tu domā par Vecrīgi?
JĀNIS:	Mani pārsteidza tas, ka tāk daudz ķiku saglabājušās no pagājušajiem gadsimtiem vēl mūsu laikā, un samērā labā stāvoklī. Bet es gribēu redzēt vēl vairāk.
GUNĀRS:	Kā es jau agrāk minēju, vēlāk brauksim uz vienu senu pilī, kas varētu interesēt visu ģimeni.
GUNĀRS:	<i>Three cups of tea and one coffee, please.</i>
WAITRESS:	<i>What else?</i>
BAIBA:	<i>Perhaps I'll also take a poppy-seed bun. But for the children – well, what do you want?</i>
DZIDRA:	<i>Orange juice!</i>
IMANTS:	<i>I want hot chocolate.</i>
WAITRESS:	<i>Unfortunately we don't have (it). Then lemonade.</i>
IMANTS:	<i>Well, Jānis, what do you think of Old Riga?</i>
GUNĀRS:	<i>I was surprised that so many buildings are preserved from previous centuries even in our day, and in relatively good condition. But I'd like to see even more.</i>
JĀNIS:	<i>Yes, and as I mentioned earlier, later we'll go to an old castle that will probably interest the whole family.</i>

Vocabulary

tase	cup	saglabāties	be preserved
qmēnt	take	pagājis	past
magoņmaizite	Latvian poppy-seed bun (magine 'poppy')	gadsimts	century
apelsīns	orange	stāvoklis	comparatively, relatively
karsis	hot	kā	state, condition
limonāde	lemonade	agrāk	how, as
domāt	think	minēt	earlier (agrs 'early')
pārsteigt	surprise		mention

Language points

Compound nouns

Compound nouns can be formed fairly freely in Latvian. The first element of the compound may lose its gender marking, and if this ending is **-e** (f.) or **-is** (m.), then the preceding consonant is palatalized where possible. We met an example of a compound in the dialogue:

magine + maizite = magoņmaizite 'poppy-seed bun'

Diminutives

Maizite 'bun' is the diminutive form of **maize** 'bread'. Diminutives are very common in Latvian, being frequently used to express not only smallness but also affection. There are several diminutive endings, but **-īts** (m.) and **-īte** (f.) are among the commonest. (See also the Glossary of Grammatical Terms at the end of the book.)

The future tense

When ordering in the café, Baiba said:

Varbūt es papenušu ari magoņmaizīti.
Perhaps I'll also take a poppy-seed bun.

To form the future tense of any verb, we remove the final **-t** of the infinitive and add these endings: **-šu**, **-si**, **-s**, **-sim**, **-sit**, **-s**. The examples show the long conjugation and the three irregular verbs **būt**, **iet** and **dot**.

es	dzīvošu	'I will live'	būšu	'I will be'
tu	dzīvosi		būsi	
viņš	dzīvos		būs	
mēs	dzīvosim		būsim	
jūs	dzīvosit		būsit	
viņi	dzīvos		būs	
es	dōšu	'I will give'		
tu	dosi			
viņš	dos			
mēs	dosim			
jūs	dosit			
viņi	dos			

You will recognize **iesim** from previous lessons as 'let's go'. The future tense is also used like this for the first person plural imperative, 'let's'.

For verbs of the short conjugation with infinitives ending in **-st** (such as **prast**, **saprast**), however, the rule is slightly different. The same future-tense endings are added to the *past-tense stem* of these verbs, plus a linking **-i**. Examples:

es	prast	'know how'	sist	'hit'
tu	pratišu		sitišu	
viņš	pratīs		sitiši	
mēs	pratisim		sitišim	
jūs	pratisit		sitišit	
viņi	pratis		sitiši	

'There is not; we don't have'

In lesson 2 we learned how to say 'to have' in Latvian. To negate the idea of the verb 'to have', we use a similar construction: the dative of the possessor with the negative of the verb 'to be', which in the negative is **nav**. So when the waitress said they didn't have any hot chocolate she used this construction:

Diemžīl mums nav.
Unfortunately we don't have it.

The construction for 'there is not' is similar. The thing that is lacking appears in the *genitive* case. The waitress might also have said one of the following:

Diemžīl karstas šokolādes nav.
Unfortunately there isn't any hot chocolate.

Diemžīl mums karstas šokolādes nav.
Unfortunately we don't have any hot chocolate.

'The fact that'

In the dialogue, Jānis said:

Mani pārsteidza tas, ka tiki daudz ķēku saglabājušas.

I was surprised (= It surprised me) that so many buildings are preserved.

The word for 'that' when introducing a clause is **ka**. Notice the other features of this construction: **tas** 'the fact' (= it) is always followed by a comma, and the word **tas** appears in the *nominative*, so it is the subject of the sentence. Literally the sentence begins 'Me surprised it, that ...'. As we shall see in later lessons, Latvian avoids passive constructions like 'I was surprised by ...' in many cases where English prefers the passive.

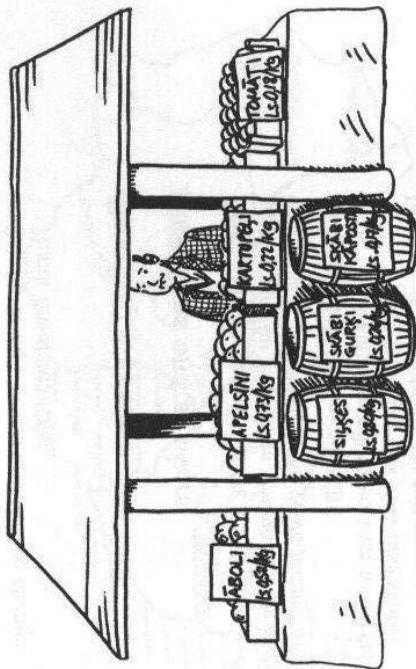
Exercise 3

Put the sentences in exercise 1 into the future tense.

Language in action

See how much you understand of these Riga shop-windows and market-stall displays. Prices are in the Latvian currency, the **lats** (pl. **lati**). The **lats** is divided into 100 **santimi**. Vocabulary to help you can be found at the end of the book.

- Now imagine you are going into each of the shops or stalls as shown above. Pick an item on display at each place that you would like to buy. If you are working with a partner, so much the better
 - get your partner to respond as the shop assistant or stallholder, but even if you are working alone:
- Ask to see the item.
- Ask how much it is, to check the price.



PARTIKAS VEIKALS



Exercise 4

- Now imagine you are going into each of the shops or stalls as shown above. Pick an item on display at each place that you would like to buy. If you are working with a partner, so much the better
 - get your partner to respond as the shop assistant or stallholder, but even if you are working alone:
- Ask to see the item.
- Ask how much it is, to check the price.

Say you will take it.
Pay for it with 10 lats and receive change.
Thank the shopkeeper.

Reading passage

Questions and answers

Later, Gunārs and Aija drive the family to the ancient castle of Sigulda, not far from Riga. Imants is very interested in the history of the place, and he asks the guide for information about it

IMANTS: Kas dzīvoja šādā pilī?

GIDS: Senlatviešu pilī dzīvoja un to pārvaldīja vīrsaitis. Viņam bija pakļauta visa viņa lieļā saime.

IMANTS: Kas piedereja pie pils saimē?

GIDS: Pie tās piedereja vīrsaiša ģimenes loceklī un tuvākie radinieki; bez tam – daudzie kalpi un kalpones, kas apstrādāja vīrsaiša plašas laukus. Visbeidzot pie pils saimes piedereja vēl vīrsaiša draugā, viņa kara biedri.

IMANTS: Ko viņi darīja?

GIDS: Draugi bija pils pastāvīgie aizsargi, kā arī vīrsaiša tuvākie palīgi un padomnieki viens lietās.

IMANTS: Kas notika uzbrukuma gadījumā vai kara laikā?

GIDS: Kara laikā sapulcējās kaujasspējīgie vīrieši no visa pils novada, kas aptvēra vairākus pagastus. Vīrsaitis vadīja sapulcētos kareivju kara gaitās, vai nu atisrot ienaidnieku uzbrukumus, vai arī iebrūkot ienaidnieka zemē.

Vocabulary

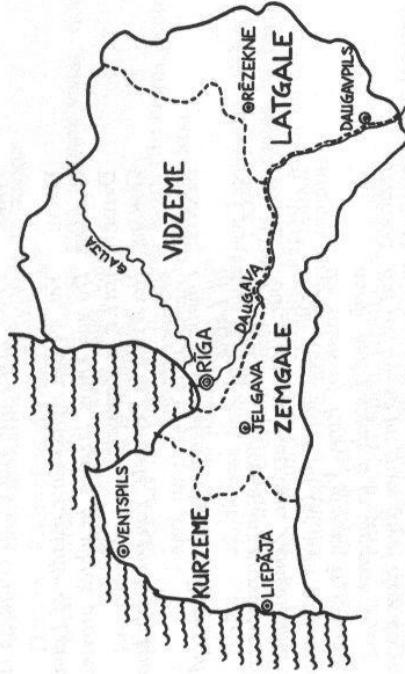
gids	guide	loceklis	member (pl. <i>locekji</i>)
senlatviešu	(the) ancient Latvians'	radinieks	relative
pārvaldīt	administer	bez tam	besides, moreover
vīrsaitis	chief	kalps	servant (m.)
paklauts	subject, subordinate	kalpone	servant (f.)
liels	great, big	apstrādāt	work, till
saimē	household	plāss	extensive, broad, big
piederēt (pie)	belong (to)		

laiks	field	vīrietis	man (pl. <i>vīrieši</i>)
visbeidzot	last of all	novads	region
karš	war	aptvert	include (past tense <i>aptvēra</i>)
biedrs	companion,	vairāki (pl.)	several
pastāvīgs	permanent	pagasts	rural district
aizsargs	guard, defender	radīt	lead
kā arī	as well as	sapulcēts	assembled
paliņš	assistant, helper	kareivis	soldier
padomdevējs	adviser (<i>padoms</i> 'advice'; <i>devējs</i> 'giver')	gaita	procession, course
		vai nu ...	either ... or else
		vai arī	
notikt	happen (past tense <i>notika</i>)	atisnot	repulsing (from atist 'repulse')
sapulcējās	gathered, assem- bled (past tense of <i>sapulcēties</i>)	ienaidnieks	enemy
kaujasspējīgs	fit for combat	iebrūkot	invading (from iebrukt 'invade')
	(<i>kauja</i> 'battle'; <i>spējīgs</i> 'able')	zeme	land, country
		uzbrukums	attack
		gadijums	case, event

5 Lauku dzīve

Country life

59



By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- the geography of Latvia
- impersonal and reflexive verbs
- prepositions with plural nouns
- how to say 'must'
- negation: 'is not'
- clauses without subjects

Dialogue 1

Guests from the country

Later that week, the Kalejs family spend the evening around the dinner-table in their hosts' flat. They have two extra guests: Gunārs and Baiba's son Ivars and his wife Dace, who have arrived from the country

DACE: Nu, kā jums patīk Latvijā, bērni? Mēs esam tik daudz dzirdējuši par jums un par Austrāliju!

IMANTS: Man ļoti patīk Latvijā! Bet līdz šim mēs esam paspējuši redzēt tikai Rīgu.

DACE: Dzīve ir gan citādāka, nekā Austrālijā, vai ne, Dzidra?

DZIDRA: Jā.

IVARS: Vai jūs gribētu uz dažām dienām atbraukt pie mums un paskatīties, kā mēs dzīvojam Latvijas laukos?

DZIDRA: Protams! Vai mēs brauksim, onkul Gunār?

GUNĀRS: Kāpēc ne? Brauksim visi kopā! Bet vai jūs zinat, kur dzivo Ivars ar Daci? Paskatīsimies Latvijas kantē!

IVARS: Lūk, šeit ir mūsu ciems, Gundegas pagastā, pie Madonas. DACE: Jā, mēs dzīvojam tieši Latvijas vidū!

- IVARS: Look, here's our village, in Gundega rural district, near Madona.
 DACE: Yes, we live right in the middle of Latvia!
 GUNĀRS: Do you know, Dzidra, in which province Madona is?
 DZIDRA: Isn't it in Zemgale?
 GUNĀRS: No, it isn't in Zemgale. You probably know, Imants, which province it's in?
 IMANTS: I think it's in Vidzeme, because Dace said it's in the middle of Latvia.
 DACE: Yes, correct! And how many provinces are there in Latvia?
 IMANTS: Four: Vidzeme, Kurzeme, Zemgale and Latgale.
 BAIBA: Good! Kurzeme is in the west of Latvia, Zemgale is to the south of Riga, Vidzeme is around the middle and north, and Latgale is in the east.
 DZIDRA: But you live so far from Riga! How do you travel to Riga?
 IVARS: We travel by bus, but we ought to have a car!

Vocabulary

patīkt	please (man patīk 'I like')	līk	look, there it is
loti ~	much, a lot, very	cīems	village
dzirdēt	hear	vidus	middle
līdz (+ dat.)	until, up to (līdz sim 'up to now')	novads	province
		atrasties	be (located, situated) (pres.)
gan	indeed, really, certainly	rajons	tense atrodas) region, (administrative) district
	(emphatic particle)	jo	because
cītāds	different	pareizs	right, correct
drīve	life	rietumi	west
kājēc	why	dienvīdi	south
skaitīties	look	ziņelis	north
karte	map	austrumi	east

Language points

Impersonal verbs

Man loti patīk Latvija. I like Latvia a lot.

A few very common verbs in Latvian are used in the third-person singular with the logical subject in the dative case. Two of the commonest are **patīkt** 'to please' and **vajadzēt** 'to be necessary'. To express 'liking' we thus say **man patīk, tev patīk, mums patīk** and so on. The children were asked

Kā jums patīk Latvija? How do you like (it in) Latvia?

The past tense, incidentally, is **patīka**:

Man loti patīka Latvijā. I liked Latvia a lot.

Likewise, to express 'needing' we use **vajag**, which is the third-person present-tense form of **vajadzēt** (note the change of **dz** to **g**). For instance,

Mums vajag mašīna.

We need a car.
Or, as Ivars said in the subjunctive:

Mums vajadzētu mašīnu.
Tām vajag daudz laika.

We ought to have a car.
It requires/takes a lot of time.
The past tense is **vajadzēja**:

Tā tev vajadzēja!
(= 'You needed that!')

Similar expressions include:

man bail	I'm afraid
man garšo	I like (the taste of)
man salst	I am cold
man trūkst	I am lacking
man žēl	I'm sorry

Useful words and expressions

Gan is a very common word in Latvian – you find it a few times in the conversation in this lesson. It generally means something like 'really', 'certainly', 'indeed', 'I do', 'he was', and so on.

Dzīve ir gan citādāka, nekā Austrālijā.
Life sure is different to (life in) Australia.

Lūk is another common word used for pointing out things, either seen or heard. It can mean 'look', but it is also rather like *voilà* in French or *BOT* in Russian:

Lūk, šeit ir mūsu ciems. Look, here's our village.

Līdz šim, literally 'until this' means 'up to now'.

Uz dažām dienām 'for a few days'. (Likewise we say **uz dažām minūtēm** 'for a few minutes', **uz dažiem gadiem** 'for a few years' and so on.)

Prepositions governing nouns in the plural

From the example **uz dažām dienām** quoted above, you will see that the noun case governed by **uz** is the dative plural. This is true of all prepositions: *no matter what case they govern in the singular, they only govern the dative in the plural*. Compare these examples:

Mēs braucam no citas pilsētas. (gen.)
We are travelling from another town.

Mēs braucam no citām pilsētām. (dat.)
We are travelling from other towns.

Mēs braucu uz citu pilsētu. (acc.)
We are travelling to another town.

Mēs braucam uz citām pilsētām. (dat.)
We are travelling to other towns.

Es braucu kopā ar savu draugu. (acc.)
I am travelling (together) with my friend.

Es braucu ar saviem draugiem. (dat.)
I am travelling with my friends.

Ivars: Iesim apskatīties mūsu mājas dzīvnieku.

Dzidra: Kādi mājas dzīvnieki jums ir?

Dace: Mums ir divas cūkas, viena govs, astoņas vistas, viens galils, suns Reksis, kakis Muris –

Pie jums te ir brīnišķīgi!

Imants: Bet nav tik viegli, kā tu domā! Katru rītu mums jācēlas agrī, un jāslauc govs, jābaro cūkas un vistas.

Un vai tad jums ir liels dārzs?

Jā, diezgan liels, jo mēs audzējam kartupeļus, miežus, ar ko mēs barojam cūkas un vistas, un bieties, lai barotu govi. Mums ir arī burkāni, kāposti, gurķi, un arī maza siltumnīca, kurā mēs audzējam tomātus.

Dzidra: Un kas vēl?

Dace: Protams, vēl sīpoli, kiploki un arī dilles.

Gunārs: Un vai jums tad nekas vairāk no pārtikas nav jāpērk?

Kā tad. Mums jāpērk maize, sāls un arī cukurs.

Ivars: Let's go and look at our domestic animals.

Dzidra: What kind of (domestic) animals do you have?
Dace: We have two pigs, one cow, eight hens, one rooster, Reksis the dog, Muris the cat –

Imants: It's wonderful here at your place!
But not as easy as you think! Every morning we have to get up early, and milk the cow, feed the pigs and hens.

Baba: And do you have a big garden then?

Ivars: Yes, quite big, because we grow potatoes, barley to feed the pigs and hens with, and beet to feed the cow. We also have carrots, cabbages, cucumbers, and a little greenhouse too, where we grow tomatoes.

Dzidra: And what else?
Dace: Of course onions, garlic and dill as well.
Gunārs: So you don't have to buy any more food then?
Ivars: Of course we do. We have to buy bread, salt and sugar too.

Dialogue 2

At Dace's and Ivars' farm

The family is now visiting Dace's and Ivars' farm. Their hosts are showing them around

Vocabulary

apskatīties	look around (reflexive)	govi (f.)	cow
dzīvnieki	animal	vista	hen
cūka	pig	gailis	cock, rooster
		suns	dog

kaķis nav	cat (it is) not	kāposti (pl.)	cabbage only)
vieglis kā	light, (here) easy as (tīk ... kā ... 'as ... as ...')	gurķis mazs siltumnīca	cucumber little, small hothouse,
katrs trīs	each, every	tomāts	greenhouse
celties	morning	sipols	tomato
slakst	get up, rise	kiploks	onion
barot	milk	dilles (pl. only)	garlic
audzēt	feed	nekas	dill
kartupelis	grow, cultivate	pārtika	nothing (stress on second syllable)
micēti (pl. only)	potato	pirkt	food(stuff)
ar (+ acc.)	barley	kā tad	buy
bietie	with		(idiom) yes, of course (we do)
lai (+ sub- junctive)	beest(root)		salt
burkāns	(in order) to	sāls	sugar
	carrot	cukurs	

derived from a non-reflexive counterpart; for example *celt* means 'to lift, raise'; *celties* means 'to rise, get up'. Now compare the way these two verbs are conjugated, noting especially the palatalization of *I*:

katrs	celu	celos
trīs	cel	celies
celties	cel	celas
slakst	ceļam	celamies
barot	ceļat	celaties
audzēt	cel	celas
kartupelis		
micēti (pl. only)		
ar (+ acc.)		
bietie		
lai (+ sub- junctive)		
burkāns		

Note that the palatalization in all persons except the second-person singular in the non-reflexive form is mirrored exactly in the reflexive form.

In verbs of the short conjugation where the stem vowel becomes a diphthong in the non-reflexive form, the same happens in the reflexive form, as in *tīkt* 'become' and *tīkties* 'to meet' (note the complete difference in meaning):

es	tieku	tiekos
tu	tieci	tiecies
viņš	tieki	tiecias
mēs	tiecam	tiecamies
jūs	tiekat	tiekties
viņi	tieki	tiekas

In certain verbs of the mixed conjugation, where the third-person singular of the non-reflexive form ends in **-a**, the vowel of the ending is lengthened:

es	tieku	tiečas
tu	tieci	tiečas
viņš	tieki	tiečas
mēs	tiecam	tiečamies
jūs	tiekat	tiečties
viņi	tieki	tiečas

Language points

Reflexive verbs

Iesim apskatīties mūsu mājas dzīvniekus.

Let's go and look at our farm (domestic) animals.

Reflexive verbs are those which generally, but in Latvian not always, refer the action back to the subject of the verb. The infinitive ending is extended from **-t** to **-ties**: for example, *mazgātai* means 'to wash', but *mazgāties* means 'to wash oneself'; likewise, *mācīt* means 'to teach', whereas *mācīties* means 'to learn' (= teach oneself). Some verbs, like *apskatīties* in the example above, have no obvious reflexive meaning and can even take other objects (*mūsu mājas dzīvniekus*). *Apskatīt* means 'to examine, view' (a particular thing), whereas *apskatīties* means 'look around' in a more general sense. *Apskatīt* is always transitive (must take an object), whereas *apskatīties*, being reflexive, may be transitive or intransitive. Sometimes the meaning of a reflexive verb is reciprocal, such as *satikties* 'meet (each other)'.

The endings of the reflexive verbs in the present tense are, for most verbs: **-os**, **-ies**, **-as**, **-amies**, **-aties**, **-as**. All reflexive verbs are

Use of the adverb in subjectless clauses

Pie jums te ir brīnišķīgi!
It's wonderful here at your place!

Bet nav tik viegli, kā tu domā!
But not as easy as you think!

The English pronoun 'it' in the phrase 'it's wonderful' does not refer to anything specific; it is merely a 'dummy subject'. In Latvian it is possible to have a sentence without a subject, but in such cases the adjective referring to the indefinite 'it' will appear in its adverbial form, with **-i:** **brīnišķīgi, viegli.**

Negation of the verb 'to be'

es	neesmu
tu	neesi
viiš/viņa/tas	nav
mēs	neesam
jūs	neesat
viņi/tie	nav

These forms are quite regular except the third-person form **nav**, which on its own means 'it is not'.

Time expressions with the accusative case

Katrū rītu every morning
vienā dienu for one day
acumirkli! (just) a moment! (nom. acumirklis)

Expressions of a particular moment in time appear in the accusative case, even if the verb that accompanies them is not transitive:

Katrū rītu mēs cējamies.
Every morning we get up.

The deitative mood: 'must'

Latvian has a rather unusual way of expressing the idea of obligation, by means of what we call the *deitative mood* of the verb. It has only one form for each verb, and is not affected by changes

of tense. Earlier in this lesson we met constructions like **man patīk** 'I like', **man vajag** 'I need', where the 'logical subject' appears in the dative case and the 'logical object' in the nominative. The same principle applies to the deitative mood. The deitative mood is formed simply by adding the prefix **jā-** to the *third-person present-tense* form of the verb (and in pronunciation, the stress shifts, as always, to this first syllable). Look at these examples from the text:

Katrū rītu mums jāceļas agri, jāstāuc govs, un jābaro cikas un vistās.

Every morning we have to get up early, milk the cow, and feed the pigs and hens.

For emphasis we can add the verb **ir** before the deitative verb, but it is usually left out. However, it must not be left out in the past tense:

Man ir jāstāuc govs.	I have to milk the cow.
Man bija jāstāuc govs.	I had to milk the cow.

Some irregular nouns

Here are two quite common irregular nouns that occurred in the dialogue, which are worth noting:

	govs (f.) 'cow'	suns (m.) 'dog'
Singular		
nom.	govs	suns
acc.	govi	suni
gen.	govs	sunā
dat.	govij	sunim
loc.	govi	sunī
Plural		
nom.	govi	suni
acc.	govi	sunus
gen.	govju	sunu
dat.	govīm	suniem
loc.	govīs	sunos

Zivs 'fish' declines like **govs**.

Lai**Mēs audzējam bietes, lai barotu govi.**

We grow beets in order to feed the cow.

Lai corresponds to the English phrase 'in order to'; it indicates purpose. The verb that follows it will appear in the subjunctive mood (-u).

Mēs slaucom govi, lai dabūtu pienu.

We milk the cow in order to get milk.

Es celos agri no rīta, lai ietu uz darbu.

I get up early in the morning to go to work.

Double negation

Two negative elements do not make a positive in Latvian:

Un jums tad nekas vairāk no pārtikas nav jāpērk?

And so you don't have to buy any more (of) food?

Useful negative words to know are:

nekur	nowhere
nekas	nothing, acc. neko , gen. nekā
nekad	never (all stressed on second syllable)

Double negation is not just an option, it is a necessity. As we have already seen, the negated logical subject appears in the genitive case:

Man nav naudas.**Man nav nekā.****Vai jums nav mājas?**

I have no money.
I don't have anything.
Do you have no house?

Exercise 1

Supply the missing present-tense endings:

- 1 Es māc _____ latviešu valodu. (= 'am learning')
- 2 Es māc _____ latviešu valodu. (= 'am teaching')
- 3 Tu cel _____ agri no rīta.
- 4 Vini apskat. _____ māju.
- 5 Mēs _____ ar saviem draugiem. (tikties 'meet' + ar)

Exercise 2

Join these pairs of sentences together with the conjunction **lai**:

- 1 Vija mācās latviešu valodu. Vija saprot latviešus.
- 2 Mēs audzējam bietes. Mēs barojam govis.
- 3 Es braucu uz Latviju. Es piedalos apspriedē ('take part in a conference'; piedalīties 'take part'; apspriedē 'conference').
- 4 Mana māte dod man sviestmaizes. Man ir kaut kas, ko ēst.
- 5 Es steidzoz. Es noķeru autobusu. (steigties 'hurry'; note **g > dz**; nokert 'catch')

Exercise 3

Negate these sentences:

- 1 Es gribu kaut ko darīt.
- 2 Vai Jums ir nauda?
- 3 Man vienmēr patik celties agri. (vienmēr 'always')
- 4 Kaut kas ir noticis pie mums. (notikt 'happen')
- 5 Man garšo jūsu kartupeli.

Exercise 4

Put these sentences into the debitive mood:

- 1 Es braucu ar autobusu.
- 2 Cilvēkam ir draugi.
- 3 Mēs steidzamies uz pilšētu.
- 4 Vija dzer daudz sulas.
- 5 Es zvanu savai mātei. (zvanīt 'ring up')

Reading passage

Latvia has always been an agricultural country. During the Soviet period, with its heavy emphasis on industrialization, there was a large shift of population to the cities, but much of that population shifted from outside Latvia. Latvia remains a farming country as it has been for centuries. Rural life is a popular theme in the works of some of Latvia's most respected writers. One of these was Jānis Jansudrabiņš (1877–1961). Here is a brief passage from one of his well-loved lyrical accounts of rural life in the Latvia of his youth,

from the novel *Baltā grāmata* ('The White Book', 1921). In its first chapter (*Mūsmājas*, 'Our home'), he describes the farmstead in which he grew up

Lai tiktu lieļajos stāljos, tad jājet visai pazīstamo ēku rindai garām, atpakaļ līdz pat saimnieku jaunajai kletij. Blakām saimnieku dārza vārtiņiem biji lieli no dēļiem sasisti vārti, no apakšas dubļiem un mēsliem apšķējuši. Pa vārtiem vispirms tika laida rā, prāvā, tik biezš, ka pat vistai pa to izlīst būtu nācies grūt! Otrs divas pusēs bija stālli vienā laidā.

1 'It would have been hard even for a hen to slip through it.'

Vocabulary

tikt	get, reach	apakša	bottom, below-part
stālis	stable (gen. stāļa, pl. stāļi)	dubļi	mud
pazīstams	familiar	mēsi	manure, dung
rinda	row	(pl. only)	(pl. only)
garām	past, by (position or position + dat.)	apšķēšēt	get dirty
	back	tika	one got, reached (past tense of tikt)
atpakaļ	right up to (pat even)	laidars	cattle-yard
līdz pat	farmer, owner	pravš	fair-sized, largish
saimnieks	barn	četrstūrains	square (lit. 'four-cornered')
klets (f.)	beside (or blakums, preposition + dat.)	ležogojums	enclosure
blakām	gate	puse	side
vārti	(pl. only)	kārtis (f.)	pole
vārtiņi	wicket-gate	žogs	fence
	(diminutive of above)	blezs	thick
bij	= bija	izlist	slip through
dēlis	board, plank	nācēs	(past participle of nākties) have to be
sasisti	(past passive pl. participle of sasist)	grūt	hard, difficult (= grūti)
	knocked together	otrs	other
		viensā laidā	uninterruptedly, continuously

Revision

It's time for us to review some of the things we have learned so far; and it's also time for the Kalējs family to sit down and write a few letters about their experiences in Latvia so far. So let's help them.

- 1 Dzidra writes a postcard home to her Latvian-Australian schoolfriend Anna in Adelaide. She isn't sure which endings are correct on some of the words she uses, so she asks her mother to fill them in for her. What does Baiba write?

Rīg, 18.6.1994

Dārg_ Anna,

Mēs dzīvo __ seit Rīg __ pie man __ tēvo __ un man __ krustmāt __ kas ir ļoti laipn. Viņi ir mums rādi __ daudz viet __ Rīg __ un tās apkārt __. Bet vislabāk __ līdz šm bi __ brauciens uz lauk __ māj __ pie Madon __. Tur mēs redz __ cūk __, vist __ gov __ un daudz vairāk. Vēl daž __ nedā __ mēs būs __ Latvij __. Māte ir nopirk __ daudz liet __ piemēr __ man viņa nopirkta aprōc __.

Dzidra.

- 2 To his schoolfriend, Anna's brother Roberts, Imants tells a slightly different story of his impressions of Latvia on his postcard. He is more cautious; he writes out a draft version of his postcard in English, which his father helps him to write out correctly in Latvian. What does his father tell him to write?

Rīga, 18.6.1994

Dear Roberts [= Sveikls, Robert!]

We arrived here in Latvia five days ago by aeroplane. We're staying with Uncle Gunārs and Aunt Aija, who have been showing us around Rīga. Dad and Uncle Gunārs are interested in old castles, and they took us to visit a famous castle outside Rīga. We've also been visiting a farm that belongs to our cousins Ivars and Dace. All the best,
Imants

3 Baiba writes home to her old friend Ināra in Adelaide. Translate what she writes:

Rīga, 18.6.1994
Dārgā Ināra!

Mēs ar Gunāru un bēriem esam šeit Rīgā jau piekto dienu. Tikai dažu nedēļu laikā ir tik daudz ko redzēt un apmeklēt šeit Latvijā! Un tik daudz kas ir mainījies kopš tā, kad mēs dzīvojām šajā zemē savā jaunībā! Tomēr vēl pastāv daudz ēku un ielu, ko es vēl tagad pazinu. Visi ir tik laipni pret mums, un viss ir tik interesants! Ivars un viņa sieva Dace, ar ko es nekad nebiju sastikusies, varak rādīja savu māju laukos, no kurienes mūsu Rīgas radinieki, viņu vecāki, sanēm sveigas pārtikas. Ceru tikai, ka mums pietiks laiks redzēt visu, ko esam nodomājuši.

Kā es solīju, es tev jau nopirku krelles no Rīgas!
Ar sīrsniņiem sveicieniem, Baiba

4 But Gunārs is not writing home to Australia at all. Instead he sits down to write a business letter. How would you help him to write it in Latvian?

Write to the manager of the Aizkraukle Wood Processing Company. Explain that you own a small import-export business in Australia. You would like to expand its markets, especially in Latvia, as you have family connections here, know the country well and are currently visiting it for four weeks. Ask if it would be possible to arrange a meeting to discuss company operation.

Give your temporary address: Jūrmalas gatve 67 – 17, LV 1067 Rīga.

Some extra vocabulary to help you will be found in the English-Latvian glossary at the end of the book.

6 Dzimšanas diena

A birthday

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- dates, months, days of the week and times of the day
- verb infinitive forms

Dialogue 1

Dzidra has a birthday

At breakfast the next day, Baiba has an important announcement to make

BAIBA: Šodien ir Ipaša diena – vai jūs zinat kāpēc?

IMANTS: Jā, Dzidrai ir dzimšanas diena!

BAIBA: Daudz laimes tev, Dzidra!

GUNĀRS: Vinais jau ir – cik tev gadu ir tagad?

DZIDRA: Vienpadsmīt.

JĀNIS: Nu, šodien nav tikai tava dzimšanas diena, bet arī svētdiena – brīva diena mums visiem. Ko tu visvairāk gribētu darīt savā dzimšanas dienā?

DZIDRA: Iesim uz cirkuļu, vai uz brīvdabas muzeju varam

AUĀ: Par cirkuļu es neko nezinu, bet uz brīvdabas muzeju varam aizbraukt, ar autobusu. Tas nav nemaz tik tālu.

(From now on, no translations of the dialogues will be given.)

Vocabulary

dzimšana	birth (dzimšanas diena 'birthday')
laime	happiness (daudz laimes 'many happy returns')

jau	already	čirks	circus
gads	year	brīvdabas	open-air
svētdiena	Sunday	muzejs	museum
briys	free	nemaz	not at all

Language points

Dates

When Latvians write dates in figures they appear in the order 'day-month-year': 18.6.1994. A more usual Latvian way to write the same date, say, in a letter, would be 1994.g. 18. jūnijš, which, expressed in words, is **tūkstoš deviņiņdesmit ceturā gada astoņpadsmitais jūnijš**. (Note that the year appears in the genitive.)

Let's now look at the elements in the construction more closely. We already know (from lesson 3) the basic elements of the Latvian number system. Now we shall study how to combine these elements. **Tūkstošis** (pl. **tūkstoši**) means 'thousand', but the singular form is generally used only when 'thousand' is thought of as a noun (**cīņā krita tūkstoši** 'a thousand fell in battle'); otherwise the plural form is used. **Simt(s)** means 'hundred' (pl. **simti**). Compound hundreds may either have the first element uninflected as part of the compound word, or be written and enunciated separately: **četrīsimi** or **četri simti** 'four hundred'.

The variation is usually a matter of emphasis. As we have already seen, compounds of the tens (-desmit) are written and pronounced as one word: **četrdesmit** '40', **piecdesmit** '50' and so on.

All numbers ending in **-desmit** or **-padsmi**, the 'teens' and the 'tens' in other words, as well as round hundreds and thousands, govern the *genitive plural* of the noun that follows them. So we say **piecpadsmit gadu** '15 years' but **divdesmit pieci gadi** '25 years'. Latvians do not always observe this rule, however. Ordinal numbers, as we already know, take the same endings as definite adjectives, and are declined like them:

Es jau lasīju piektu lelciju. I have already read lesson 5.

And we just read that today Dzidra is celebrating
savu vienpadsmito dzimšanas dienu
her eleventh birthday

The year element in the date is expressed by an ordinal number, which is indicated after figures by the letter **g** and a full stop: **1994. 8.** (= **gads** 'year').

Months

The names of the months are all masculine. Capitals are not used:

jūlijš	augusts
janvāris	februāris
marts	aprīlis
maijs	jūnijš
lījums	augusts
septembris	oktobris
novembris	decembris

Days of the week

The days of the week are all feminine. Capitals are not used:

pirmdiena	Monday
otrdiena	Tuesday
trešdiena	Wednesday
ceturtdiena	Thursday
piektdiena	Friday
sestdiena	Saturday
svētdiena	Sunday

'On Monday' and so forth is expressed by dropping the final **-a**:

Švētdien mums ir brīva diena.

On Sunday we have a free day.

Parts and times of the day

rits	morning
pusdiena	noon (pusdienas 'lunch, midday meal')
pēcpusdiena	afternoon
vakars	evening
nakts (f.)	night
pusnaktis (f.)	midnight
pus vienos	half past twelve
pus trijos	half past two
	and so on

Dialogue 2

The weather

On the way back from the open-air museum, the family suddenly gets caught in the rain

DZIDRA: Brri! Man salst!

BAIBA: Jā! Laiks ir pēkšni mainījies. Saule ir pazudusi, vējš ir sacēlies un viršū nāk tumši mākonji.

GUNĀRS: Jau sak lit! Vai tev ir lietussargs, Aija?

AIA: Jā, ir, bet vējš ir tik stiprs, ka būs grūti to atvērt. Labāk, skriesim ātrāk uz autobusa pieturu!

DZIDRA: Un šķiet, ka tagad lietus līdz vakaram.

(In the shelter of the bus stop) GUNĀRS: Ceru, ka pērkons un negaiss neilgs visu vakaru. Paskatīsimies laika prognozi avizē!

JĀNIS: Cерезим, ka rīt būs atkal labs laiks.

Vocabulary

laiks	weather	lietussargs	umbrella
salt	freeze, be cold	vējš	wind
	(man salst 'I am cold')	stiprs	strong
pēkšns	sudden	atvērt	open
mainīties	change	labāk	(we'd) better
pazust	disappear	skriet	run
pacelties	spring up (of wind)	pieturā	stop (autobusa pieturā)
nākt viršū	come over	šķist	appear, seem' (note the change of vowel)
tumšs	dark	cerēt	es
mākonis	cloud	pērkons	tu
sākt	begin, start	negaisi	vinš
lit	rain, precipitate	ilgt	mēs
lietus	rain (lit lietus 'it is raining')	prognoze	jūs
		avize	vinji

skīst	appear, seem' (note the change of vowel)	skitu
		skiet
		skītēt
		skītam
		skītāt
		skīta
	(past participle: skītīs, skītus)	
sākt	'begin'	sāku
		sāki
		sāc
		tu

(In practice this verb is hardly used in any person other than the third.)

Language points

Verbs: the present and past tenses and the infinitive

Many of the new verbs that appear in this dialogue belong to what we have already referred to as the *short conjugation*; characteristically they lack a vowel in the final syllable of the infinitive. This conjugation is quite regular and predictable; what is to some extent unpredictable is the way that some vowels and some consonants vary between the infinitive and the present- and past-tense forms. As many of these verbs are very common, it is worthwhile learning how they behave. Let us examine a few of the short conjugations in the present and past tenses, and note how they differ from the infinitive:

salt 'freeze, be cold'

Usually only the third-person form is used in practice: present-tense *salst*, past tense *sala*.

pazust 'disappear' (note the difference in vowel length)

es	pazudu
tu	pazudi
vinš	pazuid
mēs	pazuidam
jūs	pazuidat
vinji	pazuid

(past participle: *pazudis, pazudusi*)

vinš	sāk	sāka
mēs	sāktam	sākām
jūs	sātat	sākāt
vini	sāk	sāka

(Similar to **sākt** are **augt** 'grow', **bēgt** 'flee', **degāt** 'burn', **nest** 'carry', **cept** 'bake'.)

lit 'rain, precipitate' (in practice only third-person form used): present tense **līst**, past tense **līja** (past participle: **lījis, lījusi**)

atvērt 'open' (note changes in vowel length)

es	atveru	atvēru
tu	atver	atvēri
vinš	atver	atvēra
mēs	atveram	atvērām
jūs	atverat	atvērāt
vini	atver	atvēra

(past participle: **atvēris, atvērusi**)

skriet 'run' (an anomalous verb; note use of **-n-**)

es	skrienu/skreibju	skrēju
tu	skrien/skreibju	skrēji
vinš	skrien	skrēja
mēs	skrienam/skreibjet	skrējām
jūs	skrienat/skreibjet	skrējāt
vini	skrien	skrēja

(past participle: **skrējis, skrējusi**)

ilgt 'last, continue' (compare with **lit** and **salt**)

es	igstu	igu
tu	igsti	igi
vinš	igst	iga
mēs	igstam	igām
jūs	igstat	igāt
vini	igst	iga

(past participle: **ildzis, ilgusi**)

You will see from this that, apart from **skriet**, none of the verbs is actually irregular within its own conjugations; you can always predict the other forms if you know just one form, and there is no need therefore to learn these conjugations by heart.

Exercise 1

Answer these questions about yourself. Begin each answer with the word **Pulksten** ('o'clock'):

- 1 Cikos 'at what times' jūs ēdat brokastis?
- 2 Cikos jūs ejat uz darbusksolu? ('work/school')
- 3 Cikos jūs ēdat pudsienas?
- 4 Cikos jūs nākat mājas no darba/skolas?
- 5 Cikos jūs ejat gulēt?

Exercise 2

Answer these questions about yourself and your relatives:

- 1 Cik gadu jums ir?
- 2 Cik gadu ir jūsu mātei?
- 3 Cik gadu ir jūsu tēvam?
- 4 Vai jums ir māsa ('sister')? Cik vīnai ir gadu?
- 5 Vai jums ir brālis? Cik vīnam ir gadu?
- 6 Vai jums ir bērni? Cik vīnkiem ir gadu?

Exercise 3

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 My sister is cold.
- 2 The work lasted all day.
- 3 The three children were running after their mother.
- 4 It was already raining when I opened my umbrella.
- 5 At four o'clock it began to rain. (Don't translate 'it'.)
- 6 It seems to me that she has disappeared.

Language in action

A weather forecast

Here is a typical weather forecast for a day in May, early summer in Latvia. See if you understand the text with the help of the vocabulary provided.

Laiks Latvijā

Latvija – mākoņains laiks, brīžiem skaidrosies. Teritorijas lielakajā daļā neliels īslaicīgs lietus, atsevišķos rajonus iespējams pērkona negaiss. Rietumu, ziemeļrietumu vējš 4 – 8 m/s. (= metri sekundē). Gaisa temperatūra šodien 14..19 grādi, 17. maija naktī 2...7 grādi.

Rīga – mākoņains laiks, brīžiem skaidrosies, neliels īslaicīgs lietus. Rietumu, ziemeļrietumu vējš 4 – 8 m/s. Gaisa temperatūra šodien 16...18 grādi, 17. maija naktī 4...6 grādi.

Medicīniskais laika tips šodien otrs – labvēlīgs.

Klimatiskie dati Rīgā 16. maijā.
Vidējā diennakts temperatūra 11,0 (viendadsmit komats nulle) grādi

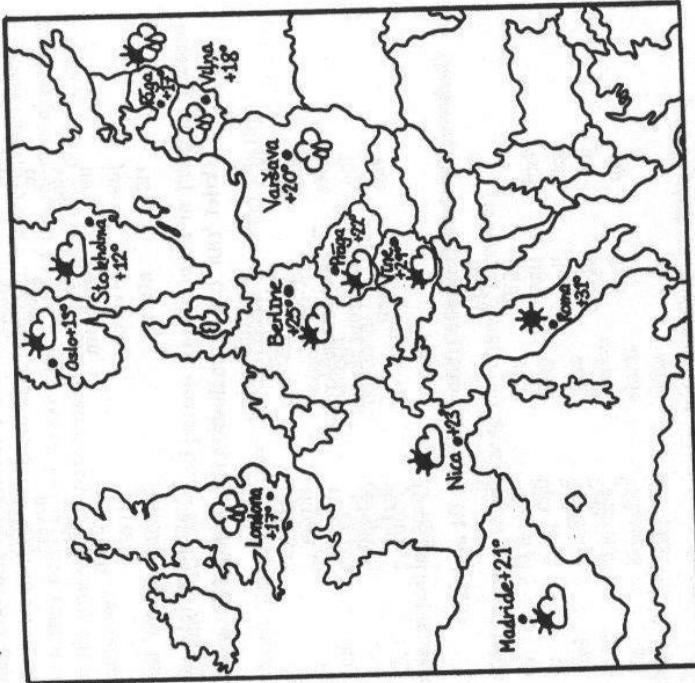
Absolutais gaisa temperatūras maksimums 29,1 (divdesmit deviņi komats viens) grādi (1975)

Absolutais gaisa temperatūras minimums –3,9 (minus trīs komats deviņi) grādi (1965)

Questions

Latvijā – mākoņains (= visaugstākā temperatūra)

- 1 Kāds būs temperatūras maksimums (= visaugstākā temperatūra)?
Latvijā 16. maijā?
- 2 Kāds vējš šodien ir?
- 3 Vai mākoņi būs visu dienu?
- 4 Vai būs lietus?
- 5 Kādā veidā (In what way) Rīgas laiks atšķiras ('differs') no Latvijas laika vispar ('generally')?
- 6 Kad bija Rīgas absolūtais gaisa temperatūras maksimums? (in words)



Vocabulary

mākoņains	cloudy	gaiss	air
brīžiem	at times, occasionally (dat. pl. of brīdis)	temperatūra	temperature
		nakts (f.)	night (pl. nakts)
skaidrosies	will clear up	medicīnskais	medical (health-related)
	(future tense of skaidroties)	tips	type (otrais 'type 2')
teritorija	territory	labvēlīgs	favourable
liejakais	most, greater	klimatisks	climatic
dala	part	dati	data
neiens	(here) slight, light	vidējs	average, mean
īslaicīgs	brief	dieninakts	day (24-hour period)
atsevišķs	certain, separate,	absolūts	absolute
iespējams	particular	maksimums	maximum
metrs	possible	mīnimums	minimum
sekunde	metre	virziens	direction

Note the use of the comma (komats) instead of decimal points.

Looking at the weather map of Europe and the cities listed, you will see that all the place-names have feminine endings. This is an inflexible rule in Latvian: all place-names are feminine and must be spelt in a form indicating feminine gender. This applies to all places in all countries, unless the name *as pronounced* (rather than

as spelt, for all names are respelled according to Latvian spelling rules) ends in **-u** or **-o** (**Turku**, **Oslo**, **Bordo** = 'Bordeaux'). Nevertheless you can probably recognize most of the names of European cities given here, or identify them from the map. (Minhene, by the way, is what we know as Munich.) Now write out in words the temperature indicated for the following cities:

- 1 Prague
- 2 London
- 3 Nice
- 4 Vienna
- 5 Vilnius
- 6 Warsaw

Reading passage

Here is a simple poem (united) by the Latvian poetess Ilze Kalnāre (1918-1968). Using the vocabulary below you should have little trouble understanding it. The word order in poetry can be very flexible. Pay especial attention to the past-tense forms of verbs, given in the infinitive form in the vocabulary.

Mīla biju tev un maiga,
Rausu asaru no vaiga.
Kopā abi druvā gājām
Smilšu aplipisām kājām.
Liksma nebija katra diena,
Bet es necietu to viena;
Tu uz pļeaca roku liki,
Tu man bēdās tuvāk tiki.
Smagnu nastu nesām abi,
Jučām: ai, cik dzīvot labi –
Ieplēst purvā jaunu lauku,
Dzirdēt druvu šalku jauku;
Brist pa kūpenām un rasu,
Paciest lietu, vēju asu.
– Mīla biju tev un maiga,
Galvu piegaudu pie vaiga.
Kopā abi druvu plāvām,
Darbam sevi saliekt lāvām.
Zinājām: tā mīza alga

Just – no sviedriem valga,
Redzēt – sēta kalnā celta,
Kuru mierīgs vakars zēta.

Vocabulary

mīls	dear, beloved	brist	wade
maigs	gentle, tender	kupena	snow-drift
raust	rake (here: 'remove')	rasa	dew
		paciest	endure
		ass	sharp, keen
asara	tear	galva	head
valgs	cheek	piegauzt	press
abi	both	plaut	reap, mow
druva	cornfield	darbs	work
smilts	sand	sevi	self, selves
aplīpt	stick, cling	saliēkt	bend, stoop
kāja	foot, leg	laut	allow, let
liksms	joyful	mižs	life(time)
cīest	suffer	alga	wages, due
viens	alone	sviedri (pl.)	sweat
plecs	shoulder	valgs	moist, damp
roka	hand	sēta	fence, courtyard (here: 'house')
likt	put, place		
bēdas (pl.)	grief, sorrow		
tuvāk	closer, nearer		
smags	heavy		
nasta	burden, load		
just	feel		
ieplēst	tear (into)		
purvs	bog, marsh		
šalkas	rustle		

7 Līgo svētki

Midsummer celebrations

Vocabulary

ugunskurs	bonfire (ugsuns (f.) 'fire')	sagaidīt	await, welcome, expect
dziedāt	sing	saulēkti	sunrise (uzlēkt 'rise')
līgo (dziesma)	song sung at (indeclinable)	līgot	sing līgo songs, celebrate līgo
	Midsummer, named after its characteristic refrain	īsts	genuine, true, real properly

iemācīties
learn

dziesma
song

īstīgi
properly

svinēt
celebrate

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- verbal prefixes
- reflexive verbs
- subjectless clauses
- verb participles
- abstract nouns

Language points

Verbal prefixes

Many verbs in Latvian can have their meanings altered by the addition of a prefix. These prefixes are in some cases identical to prepositions, and in a general sense carry the same meanings as they do. Basically, all the prefixes contain a sense of a 'direction', but their meaning can only sometimes be guessed from the prefix. Below is a complete list of the prefixes in use (with prepositional equivalents in parentheses) followed by some examples. Prefixed verbs are very common in Latvian.

aiz-	(aiz 'behind')	aiziet	leave < iet	go
ap-	(ap 'about')	aprēķināt	calculate < rēķināt	count
at-	atdot	atdot	give back < dot	give
ie-	(iekš 'in')	iešanāt	teach < mācīt	instruct
iz-	iznēgnāt	iznēgnāt	try out < mēģināt	try
no-	(no 'off/from')	norakstīt	write off < rakstīt	write
pa-	(pa 'along/by')	pajautāt	enquire < jautāt	ask
pār-	(pār 'over')	pārnest	transfer < nest	carry
pie-	(pie 'at/to')	piešķirt	ring up < zvanīt	ring
sa-	(sa- 'together')	samierināt	reconcile < mierināt	console
uz-	(uz 'on')	uzlikt	put on < likt	put

Past tense of reflexive verbs

Asked how many līgo songs he knew, Imants said:

Parasti es nogurstu daudz agrāk! Protams, mēs šoreiz rīktīgi svinēsim Jāņus.

Trīs vai četras, ko es iemācījos skolā.
Three or four that I learned at school.

Iemācījos 'I learned' (see **iemācīt** in the list above) is the past tense (first-person singular) of **iemācīties** 'learn', a reflexive verb. Comparing the present and past tenses of reflexive verbs, we find that the endings are much the same, but, as with the active mood of most 'regular' verbs, an extra syllable is added, consisting of the long vowel of the infinitive ending + **ī**:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
es	iemācos	iemācījos
tu	iemācīs	iemācījies
vīns/vīna	iemācas	iemācījās
mēs	iemācāmies	iemācījāmies
jūs	iemācāties	iemācījāties
vīni/vīnas	iemācas	iemācījās

Subjectless clauses

Jānu rītā jāsagaida saullēktu.
On Midsummer morning one has to welcome the sunrise.

Where Gunārs said **jāsagaida saullēktu** he was not actually referring to any specific person: people in general welcome the sunrise. In Latvian we can omit the subject of a third-person verb if we wish to be vague about who performs the action: what 'one' does, 'they' do, 'people' do. We can say:

Jānu nakti līgo līdz ritam.
On Midsummer night people sing **līgo** songs until morning.

Pie ugunskura ēd, dzer un protams dzied.
By the bonfire they eat, drink and of course sing.

Dialogue 2

Latvian Midsummer traditions

Jānis and Gunārs are preparing for the evening's celebrations and talking about the Latvian traditions associated with Jāni

JĀNIS:	Gunār, ko dzersim šonakt?
GUNĀRS:	Dzersim alu un varbūt arī šnabi. Un ēdīsim sieru. Dodoties svītēt Jānus, līdzi jānem pāris pudeļu alus.
JĀNIS:	Jā, un no savas jaunības atceros daudz citu paražu, kas saistītas ar Jāniem. Piemēram, ja kādam izlodas Jānu naktī atrast papardes ziedu, tas nozīmētu, ka atradējs ieģūs laimi un milēstību.
GUNĀRS:	Tautas ticējumi arī iesaka negulēt Jānu naktī, lai ieman-
	totu mundrumu un veselību.
GUNĀRS:	Jā, pēc senās baltu cilts ticējuma. Nedrīkst aizmirst, ka Jāni taču ir loti veci svētki, no senbalta laikiem.
IMANTS:	Bet vēl šodien tā turpinās. Man liekas, ka cilvēki labprāt svin Jānus lai satiktos ar veciem draugiem.
GUNĀRS:	Ne tikai tādēļ, Imant. Vai arī jūs svīnat Jānus Austrālijā?
IMANTS:	Jā, katru gadu, bet citādi, jo tur ir protams pašlaik ziema. Piemēram, pie mums parasti nav vaimagu.
GUNĀRS:	Rezī, Jāni ir pamatā vasaras saulgriežu svētki, kas saistīti ar baltu seno auglisbas kultu. Jānu vairagi ir svētku rituāla būtiska daļa, vēl mūsdienās.

Vocabulary

šonakt	tonight
alus (m.)	beer
šababis	vodka
doties (refl.)	set off
līdz (i)	(along) with you / one
pudele	bottle
jaunība	youth
atcerēties	remember
cits	other
paraža	custom
saisītis	bound, connected
piemērs	example
(piemēram)	(piemēram 'for example')
kāds	someone
izdoties (+ dat.)	manage, succeed
atrast	find (pres. atrodi, to)
	baltu

atrodi, atrod;
past atradu)

fern
flower
mean, signify
that
finder
get
love
belief, superstition
recommend, urge
gain, win
liveliness
health

lēkt
pēc
jump
(also) according to
Baltic

cīts (f.)	tribe	pamatā	basically (pamatā base)
tradīcija	tradition	saulgrēži	solstice
pagāns	pagan	augūlīva	fertility
turpināt	continue	kults	cult
likties	seem, appear	vainags	garland, wreath
	(pres. liekas)	hūfisks	essential
satikties	meet	mūsdienās	today, nowadays
(refl. + ar)			

Language points

The present active participle -ot

Dodoties svinēt Jāņus, ...
(When) going off to celebrate Midsummer, ...

The suffix ‘-ing’ in English, the present active participle, has more than one equivalent in Latvian. In constructions like the one above, meaning ‘when going’, the suffix **-ot** is added to the third-person present-tense form of the verb. If the verb is reflexive, as it is here (dodties ‘set off’), the suffix **-ot** precedes the reflexive ending **-ies**. Some more examples:

Dodot bēriem padomus, vina saka lai viņi neiet pie ugunskura.
Giving the children advice, she urged them not to go near the fire.

Lēcot pār ugunskuru, vina apdedzināja roku.
Jumping over the bonfire, she burned her hand. (apdedzināt
(burn, scorch))

The word **beidzot** ‘finally’ is actually the present participle of the verb **beigt** ‘end’:

Beidzot atnāca visa ģimene.
Finally the whole family arrived.

Masculine nouns ending in -us

A small group of masculine nouns ends in **-us** in the nominative, including **alus** ‘beer’, which we met here. They include **medus** ‘honey’, **lietus** ‘rain’, **ledus** ‘ice’, **tirgus** ‘market’ and a few others. This is how they are declined:

			Singular
		nom.	alus
		acc.	alu
		gen.	alus
		loc.	alū
		dat.	alum

(The plural forms of most of these nouns are irrelevant; they tend to have ‘uncountable’ meanings.)

The past passive participle

Talking about his childhood memories of Midsummer, Jānis said:

atceros daudz citu tradīciju, kas saisītas ar Jāniem.
I remember many other traditions that are associated with Midsummer.

(He could also have said **kas ir saisītas**, but often the verb **ir** is omitted in dependent clauses.) **Saisītas** ‘associated’ is a *past passive participle*, the equivalent of ‘-ed’ in English. To form it, simply add the adjectival endings to the infinitive of the verb, remembering to make it agree in number and case with the noun to which it refers, like any other adjective. Here **saisītas** refers to **tradīcijas** ‘traditions’, and thus it carries the feminine plural ending.

Darbs ir paveikts.
The work is done (m. sg.).
Vilcieni ir atcelti.
The trains are cancelled (m. pl.).

(All the verbs in the examples given here have prefixes. But this is only a tendency, not a rule.)

Agent nouns

Jānis went on to say:

tas nozīmētu, ka atradējās iegus laimi un mīlestību.
that would mean that the finder will have happiness and love.
The suffix **-ējs** added to the *past-tense stem* of a verb turns it into an agent noun, signifying the doer of the action. (If the doer is clearly feminine, the ending is **-ēja**.) Other examples:

gājējs	pedestrian	gāja	< iet	go
pārdevejs	salesman	pārdeva	< pārdot	sell

kalejs	smith	< kalt	forge
(Kalejs is the name of the family in our narrative.)			

Abstract nouns

Another very common and useful suffix we have met in this lesson is the suffix **-iba**, which changes adjectives (and some other words) into abstract nouns. We have just encountered these:

jaunība	youth	< jauns	young
veselība	health	< vesels	healthy
mīlestība	love	< mīļš	dear

Subjunctive form of reflexive verbs

Imants remarked about the Midsummer celebrations that

Man liekas, ka cilvēki labprāt svin Jānus, lai satiktos ar veciem draugiem.

It seems to me that people probably celebrate Midsummer *to meet* (with) old friends.

Satiktos is the subjunctive form of the reflexive verb **satikties** 'meet'. The **-u** which is the characteristic ending of the subjunctive/conditional form changes into **-os** when the verb is reflexive, in place of the **-ies** of the reflexive active verb. As with other subjunctive forms, it is the same for all persons, singular and plural, so, for example, the verb **iesmāties** (page 86 above) would be **iesmācītos** throughout the subjunctive conjugation.

Exercise 1

Answer these questions about the dialogues:

- Ko gīmene darīs pie ugunskaura?
- Vai arī bērni drīkst ligot līdz rītam?
- Cik Līgo dziesmu Imants zina?
- Pēc tautas ticējumiem, ko nedrīkst darīt, un kas jādara, Jānis sagaidot?
- Un ja kāds atrastu papardes ziedu, ko tas nozīmētu?

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

1 Imants remembers eight **līgo** songs that he learned at school.

2 But he can't manage to remember all the words.

3 Dzidra would like to stay by the bonfire all night.

4 At Midsummer the Latvians sing songs that are connected with the summer solstice.

5 People like to celebrate Midsummer so as to meet their friends.

6 While drinking beer, we all sang the old **līgo** songs.

7 While eating cheese, Baiba and Jānis remembered the Midsummers of their youth.

Exercise 3

The passage below retells the dialogues above, using different tenses and persons. Insert the appropriate endings (remembering that in indirect, reported speech, Latvian retains the tense used in the original direct speech).

Imants Gunāram jautāja, ko vini darīs pie Jānu ugunskaurā. Gunārs vīnam atbildēja, ka vini ēd līgo, dzer līgo un dzied līgo dziesmas. Dzidra grib ligot līdz rītam, bet vīnas māte sacīja, ka bērni ne visu nakti pie ugunskaura. Gunārs sacīja, ka Jānus sagaidot, dzer alu un ēd sierī. Jānis atcer daudz parāž, kas saistīt ar Jānu. Piemēram cilvēki ne Jānu nakts, lai iemantot veselību. Jānis domā, ka cilvēki labprāt svin Jānus lai satikties ar jaunu draugu un jaunu draudzeni.

Reading passage

Dainas

A uniquely Latvian form of folk poetry is the **daina**, a simple verse form, usually of four lines, of which the long Latvian oral tradition has handed down thousands of examples. The Latvian folklorist Krišjānis Barons (1835–1923) devoted much of his life to collecting and publishing these **dainas**. Here are a few of them that are specifically associated with Midsummer and are recited and known

by Latvians even today. In these folk poems we find many examples of the various diminutive forms of nouns.

Jānu nakti apģērbošos —

Puse balta, puse melna.

Lai aug mani teļēni —
Puse balti, puse melni.

Nāc pretim, kaimenīša,
Samisim zālītēm.

Tev ābolītis, man dadžītis,
Nāc tu pate piedevām.

Es nevedu kumelinu
Jānu nakti piegulā.

Tad staigāja launie gari,
Tad burvīši, raganīnas.

Es nopirku Jānu nakti
Rudzu puku vainadziņu.

Gribēdama tīru vinu,
Tīru rudzu maizi ēst.

Vocabulary

apģērbties	dress (oneself)	dadzis, dim.	burdock
puse	half	dadžītis	as well, into the
melns	black	piedevām	bargain
augt	grow	vest (pres.)	lead, guide
teļš, dim.	calf	vedu	
telēniš		kumeļš, dim.	colt, foal
nāc		kumelinš	night-watch (of
	imperative sg. of nākt 'come'	piegula	grazing horses)
Preñ(m)	towards (me)	staigat	walk, wander
kaimiņš, f.	neighbour (here; dim.	launs	evil
kaimenīša	'neighbour-girl'	gars	spirit
samīt	trample, tread down	burvis, dim.	wizard, sorcerer
zāle, dim. zālītē	grass	burvitīs	witch
ābolītis	clover (usually āholiņš)	ragana, dim. raganīja	

rūdzi	grībēdama (f.)	wanting
puke	firs	pure
melns	vains	wine
augt	vainadziņš	

8 Brauciens ar autobusu

A bus journey

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- past participles of verbs
- verbs that change their stems
- how to use place-names
- verb negation
- Latvian money

Dialogue 1

The Kalējs family decides to travel around Latvia a little on their own, as their hosts have to stay in Riga to work. They decide to travel across the country to Aglona, in the eastern province of Latgale.

BAIBA: Gunār, vai ir iespējams ar sabiedrisko transportu nokļūt Aglonā?

GUNĀRS: Protams ka var, tikai ar vilcienu uz turieni nevar nokļūt. Tiešas dzelzceļa satiksmes ar Aglonu nav. Tapēc var braukt tikai ar autobusu.

BAIBA: Cik tālu tā ir no Rīgas?

GUNĀRS: Apmēram 250 km. (divsimi piecdesmit kilometru). Atceros, ka pagājušo gadu, kad mēs braucām uz Aglonu, bija diezgan grūts brauciens, jo Preiļos vajadzēja pārsēsties citā autobusā. Vai jums ir autobusu saraksts?

BAIBA: Diemžēl saraksta pie mums nav. Jādodas uz Rīgas autoostas uzzinu biroju. Bet brauciens ar autobusu ir

tomēr interesants pasākums, jo tādā veidā var redzēt daudz ko no skaistās Latvijas.

BAIBA: Labi! Tad dosimies uz autoostu!

Vocabulary

sabiedriskais	public	acerēties	remember
transports	transport	pārsēties	change (bus, train, etc.)
nokļūt	get, reach (+ loc. case of place)	sarakts	list, timetable
vilciens	train	autoosta	bus/coach station;
turiene	there (<i>uz turieni</i> (acc.) 'to there')	uzņima	posta 'port'
tiesīš	direct	birojs	information
dzelzceļš	railway (<i>dzelzs</i> (f.) 'iron'; <i>cēš</i> 'road')	tomēr	bureau, office
	communication,	interesants	still, yet,
satiksme	traffic	pasākums	nevertheless
apmēram	about,	daudz kas	interesting activity
	approximately		plenty

Language points

Definite forms of past participles and their declensions

Gunārs used the phrase *pagājušo gadu* 'last year'; *pagājušo* is the accusative case of the definite form of the participle *pagājis* 'past'. You will remember that the plural form of *pagājis* is *pagājuši*. We take the *-uš-* of this ending as the basis for the definite form of the participle:

nom.	pagājušais (m.), pagājušo (m./f.)	pagājušā (f.)
acc.	pagājušā (m.), pagājušajam (m.)	pagājušās (f.)
gen.		pagājušajai (f.)
dat.		
loc.		pagājušajā (m./f.)

Another term meaning 'last year' is *pērn*.

Verbs with short past-tense forms and change of consonant

Gunārs went on to say:

mēs braucām uz Aglonu we travelled to Aglona

We have already seen that there is a small group of verbs which changes the final consonant of the infinitive stem in the present tense, of which one example is **braukt**: **es braucu, tu brauc** and so on. These are all verbs of the *short conjugation*. Such verbs also form their past tenses differently from the majority of verbs. Verbs of the long and the mixed conjugation add a syllable before the personal endings in the past tense (the long vowel of the infinitive ending + **j**: **-āj-**, **-ēj-**, **-īj-**, **-ōj-**, **-ūj-**), but this class of verbs has a simpler, monosyllabic type of ending.

Compare the present and imperfect tenses of **braukt**:

	Present	Imperfect
es	braucu	braucu
tu	brauc	brauci
vīnš	brauc	brauca
mēs	braucam	braucām
jūs	braucat	braucāt
vīni	brauc	brauca

You will see that the differences between the tenses are quite minimal. We have already seen that the change of consonant is from **k** to **c** and from **g** to **dz** in both tenses. Thus **kliedz** 'shout' conjugates like this:

es	kliedzu	kliedzu
tu	kliedz	kliedzi
vīnš	kliedz	kliedza
mēs	kliedzam	kliedzām
jūs	kliedzat	kliedzāt
vīni	kliedz	kliedza

Other such verbs include:

saukt	call
plūkt	pick, pluck

Verbs with long past-tense forms and change of consonant

teikt	say
veikti	make, do, accomplish
rīkt	roar
shaukt	milk
sīkt	hum, buzz
līgt	beg, pray
beigt	finish, end
sniegt	pass, hand, give
aizliegt	forbid (+ dat.)
zviegt	neigh

Naturally this also applies to derivatives of these verb stems, such as **sasnieg** 'reach, attain', **pasnieg** 'pass, hand over', **pabeigt** 'complete', **paveikl** 'achieve' and so on.

Declension of place-names

The Latvian language is very particular about the form of place-names, both native and foreign. All place-names must clearly express gender and be declinable. Most have feminine singular forms (**Aglona**), but some have masculine plural forms (**Preili**). They all decline regularly, like other nouns: **Aglona, Preilijs** and so on. Foreign names (if they remain unaltered) are treated as if they had Latvian genders: **Helsinki** gives **Helsinkos** 'in Helsinki', **Roma** gives **Romā** 'in Rome'. If they are altered, they take a feminine final vowel: **Londona, Čikāga** and so on.

Definite form of the adjective with place-names

Tādā veidā var redzēt daudz ko no skaistās Latvijas.

In that way one can see a lot of beautiful Latvia.

Notice that in Latvian we say '*the* beautiful Latvia', using the definite form of the adjective with place-names.

Future tense of reflexive verbs

Tad dosimies uz autoostu!

We'll go (or: Let's go) to the bus station then!

The future-tense forms of reflexive verbs are quite straightforward: you simply add the usual reflexive ending **-s** to all forms of the future tense of the non-reflexive equivalent, with a slight

adjustment to the first- and second-person singular. For example, compare the conjugations of **dot** 'give' and **doties** 'go, set off':

es	dosū	dōšos	(ne...) vispār	(not) at all
tu	dosi	dōsiess	privāts	private
viņš	dos	dōsiess	firma	company, firm
mēs	dosim	dōsimies	klients	customer, client
jūs	dosit	dōsītēs	stāvvietā	shopping-place
viņi	dos	dōsiess	(stāvēt 'stand', vieta 'place')	(stāvēt 'stand', vieta 'place')

Dialogue 2 ☈

At the bus station

Baiba enquires at the ticket office about how to get to Aglona by bus.

BAIBA:
DARBINIECE:
BAIBA:
DARBINIECE:
CITS KLIENTS:

Sakiet, lūdzu, kad iet autobuss uz Aglonu?
Uz Aglonu vispār nejet autobusi!
Bet esmu dzirdējusi, ka ar autobusu var aizbraukt uz Aglonu, tikai jāpārsēžas Preilos.
Tad tie ir laikam kādi privātie autobusi, un par privātām firmām mēs nezinām!
Es zinu, kur atrodas Aglonas autobusa stāvvietā.

Ejet uz dzelzceļa stacijas pusī, un tur redzēsit stāvvietu. Bet autobuss neiet katru dienu.

Paldies jums!

Nav par ko.

Nu, bērni, mums laimējās, tur ir autobuss. Redziet: 'Rīga – Preili – Aglona'. Uzzināšu, kad mēs varēsim braukt.

Labdien! Vai šis autobuss iet uz Aglonu arī citās dienās?

Jā, tas brauc otrdiennās, ceturtdiennās un sestdiennās.
Cikos tas atiet?

Aitet no Rīgas pulksten 17.30 (pussešos), un iebrauc Aglonā pulksten 21.55 (divdesmit vienos piecdesmit piecas).

Un cikos tas atiet no Aglonas?

Agri no rīta, pulksten 4.40 (bez divdesmit minūtiem

piecos) tas dodas atpakaļ, un pienāk Rīgā pulksten 9.20 (devinos divdesmit).

Tik agri! Un cik maksā bilete?

Līdz Preiliem, Ls. 2,35 (divus latus un trīsdesmit piecius santimus), bet līdz Aglonai, Ls. 2,60 (divus latus un sešdesmit santimus).

Vocabulary

BAIBA: VADĪTĀJS:	dosū dosi viņš mēs jūs viņi	dōšos dōsiess dos dosim dosit dos	(ne...) vispār privāts firma klients stāvvietā	(not) at all private company, firm customer, client shopping-place
			atiet iebraukt	leave, depart arrive
			arrive depart	arrive, get in
			pay; cost	ticket
			lat, major unit of Latvian currency	lat, major unit of Latvian currency

Language points

Negation of the pronoun object of a negative verb

Par privātām firmām mēs nezinām!
We know nothing about private companies!

Following a rule we noted on page 97 above, the pronoun after a negative verb appears in the genitive case: **nekas** gives **ziniāšana** 'knowledge'.

Gerunds in -šana

Virtually any verb can be made into a gerund (a noun indicating an action) by removing the **-t** of the infinitive and adding **-šana**: **atiet** 'depart' gives **atiesana** 'departure'; **pārdot** 'sell' gives **pārdošana** 'selling, sale'; **zināt** 'know' gives **ziniāšana** 'knowledge'.

A note about currency

As we have already seen, the main unit of Latvian currency is the lats or lat, divided into 100 santimi. Prices are indicated with the abbreviation Ls. and a comma for a decimal point, thus: Ls. 1,60. It was the currency of the first independent Latvian republic (1918–40), was superseded by the rouble, and then re-



Exercise 2

Put the verbs into the past tense:

- 1 Mēs (pabeig) darbu pulksten septinos.
- 2 Zirgi (zviegt).
- 3 Vadītājs mums (aizliegt) stāvēt autobusā braukšanas laikā.
- 4 Viju (saukt) par Pēteri. ('He was called Peter')
- 5 No rita mēs (slaukt) govis.
- 6 Kad es viju (palūgt 'ask'), vija man (pasniegt) laikrakstu.
- 7 Cik puķu vini (noplūkt)?
- 8 Vai jūs (sasniegt 'achieve') savus mārkus (mērķis 'aim')?

Exercise 3

What are the gerund forms of the verbs in parentheses in exercise 2?

Exercise 4

Make these sentences negative:

- 1 Virtuvē ir pudeles.
- 2 Viņai ir vīrs.
- 3 Uz galda ir tēja.
- 4 Mežā bija uguns.
- 5 Skolā šodien bija lekcija.
- 6 Laukā ir lieli zirgi.
- 7 Autobusā bijis pasažieri.
- 8 Viņai bija patikamas atmiņas ('memories').

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 The train was already leaving.
- 2 Although she forbade me, I still milked the cows.
- 3 What did they shout at you?
- 4 They didn't say anything.
- 5 Last Tuesday we travelled by bus to Ogre.
- 6 The bus left Preiļi at three minutes to seven.
- 7 We begged the driver to stop.
- 8 Did you hand him the ticket?

Study the timetable for the Riga–Aglona bus, and answer the questions below, writing the times out in words:

	Pienāk	Ariet
Rīga	18.28	17.30
Ogre	19.30	18.33
Aizkraukle	19.57	19.35
Plavīnas	20.38	20.02
Līvāni	21.20	20.43
Preiļi	21.55	21.25
Aglona		

- 1 Cik ilgi autobuss brauc no Rīgas līdz Ogrēi?
- 2 Cikos tas ie brauc Aizkrauklē?
- 3 Cikos tas atiet no Aizkraukles?
- 4 Cik ilgs laiks ir starp pienāšanu Plavīnās un atiesanu no Līvāniem uz Preiļiem?
- 5 Cik ilgs ir brauciens no Rīgas uz Aglonu?
- 6 Cik ilgi autobuss stāv katra vietē?
- 7 Cikos tas ie brauc Preiļos?
- 8 Cikos tas atiet no Plavīnām?



9 Dzīvokļi un mājas

Flats and houses

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- using numbers
- irregular verbs
- verb tenses and participles

Dialogue 1 ☎

How people live

The Kalējs family cannot help noticing the cramped conditions in which their hosts live. One day Gunārs and Jānis are discussing with Baiba and Aija the housing problems of Latvians, especially in towns

BAIBA: Laikam jums ir gājis loti grūti Rīgā ar dzīvokliem šeit Rīgā.

AJĀ: Jā, kad bērni bija mazi, mēs četratā dzīvojām vienā istabā. Igi nebija iespējams tik pie dzīvokla.

BAIBA: Un kad jūs dabūjāt lielāku dzīvokli, tad bērni bija jau izaugusi?

AJĀ: Jā, arī vijiem bija loti grūti iztikt. Ivaram un Dacei taču problēmas dalejā atrisinājās, kad privatizācijas gaitā Ivara vecākiem izdevās iegūt savā ipašumā māju laukos, kurā Ivars ar Daci pastālk dzīvo.

GUNĀRS: Padomju laikā mēs ilguši gadus gaidījām rindā, un vēl tagad daudzi gaida iespēju saņemt jaunu dzīvokli. Piemēram, man ir draugi, kas dzīvo komunālā dzīvokli, trīs cilvēki divās istabās, un grib apmainīt dzīvokli, bet naudas nav.

BAIBA: Vai dzīvokli ir dārgi?

- AUĀ:
Jā, sevišķi Rīgā. Pat vienīstaba dzīvokļi tagad maksā ap pieciem tūkstošiem latu. Ar mūsu aigām to nopirkīt nav reāli.
- JĀNIS:
Kāds ir stāvoklis ar privatizācijas sertifikātiem?
- GUNĀRS:
Vismaz līdz šim nebija iespējams nopirkīt dzīvokli par sertifikātiem, tikai par naudu. Galvenā problēma ir tā, ka privatizācija iet loti lēni bet kooperatīvie dzīvokļi ir joti dārgi.
- JĀNIS:
To visu mums, Austrālijā dzīvojošiem grūti saprast. Pie mums pērk un pārdod mājas, nevis dzīvokļus. Un ari dzīvokļiem ir parasti lielāka platība. Acīmredzot pie jums dzīvokļa pirkšana ir daudz sarežģītāka lieta.
- GUNĀRS:
Un ja tu neesi dzīvokļu rindā, tad savu problēmu var risināt vienīgi, mainot dzīvokli.

Vocabulary

mēs četrājā istaba	the four of us room	komunāls	shared, municipal, communal exchange
tikt pie	secure, get hold of	apmainīt dārgs	dear, expensive thousand
taču	however, though	tuksīš reāls	realistic, practicable at least
problēma	problem	vismaz	the main (definite form only)
dalējs	partial	galvenais	co-operative
atrisināt	solve	pārdot	sell
privatizācija	privatization	kooperatīvs	and/but not area, space evidently,
vecāki	parents	nevis	obviously complicated
izdoties	succeed in, manage to (+ dat.)	platība	solve only, solely
iegūt īpašumā	acquire ownership (īpašums 'property')	acīmredzot	
pašlaik	at present	sarežģīts	
daudzi	many (people)	risināt	
iespēja	opportunity	vienu	

Language points

Numbers signifying groups

Mēs četrātā dzīvojām vienā istabā.
The four of us lived in one room.

To express concepts like 'the four of us', 'the three of them', and so on, we can use an adverb formed by adding '-atā' to the stem of the number: **mēs četrātā** 'the three of us'; likewise **vieni trijatā** 'the three of them' and so on.

Past tense of irregular reflexive verbs

Ivara vecākiem izdevās iegūt īpašumā māju laukos.
Ivars' parents managed to secure a house in the country.

We have already seen (page 85) how the past tense of regular reflexive verbs is formed. Let us note here that for irregular verbs it is formed in just the same way, adding the same endings to the irregular past-tense stem: **dot** gives **devās**; **dodas** gives **devās**.

'The fact that'

As we saw in lesson 4, 'that' is expressed by **ka**. Look at this expression used by Gunārs in the dialogue:

Galvenā problēma ir tā, ka privatizācija iet loti lēni.

The main problem is (the fact) that privatization is going very slowly.

'The fact that' is usually expressed by **tas/tā** (in the appropriate gender and case), **ka ...**

Round numbers and the genitive case

Most numbers in Latvian agree, like adjectives, with the noun they qualify. We saw an example above: **vienā istabā** 'in one room'. But certain 'round' numbers, such as **simt** 'hundred', **tūkstoš** 'thousand', may be regarded as nouns themselves, and therefore will govern the *genitive plural* of the noun they qualify. They decline like masculine nouns:

Vienistabas dzīvoklis tagad maksā ap pieciem tūkstošiem latu.
A one-roomed flat now costs about five thousand lats.

Nevis

Pie mums pērk un pārdod mājas, nevis dzīvokļus.
In our country they buy and sell houses, not flats.

The word **nevis** is used when we want to express a contrast between two sentence elements, 'not one thing *but* the other'. **Nevis** and **bet** (*gan*) 'but' can also be used together, if we want to emphasize the positive rather than the negative element, so that the sentence above could also be expressed as:

Pie mums nedz pārdot un pirkst nevis dzīvokļus, bet gan mājas.

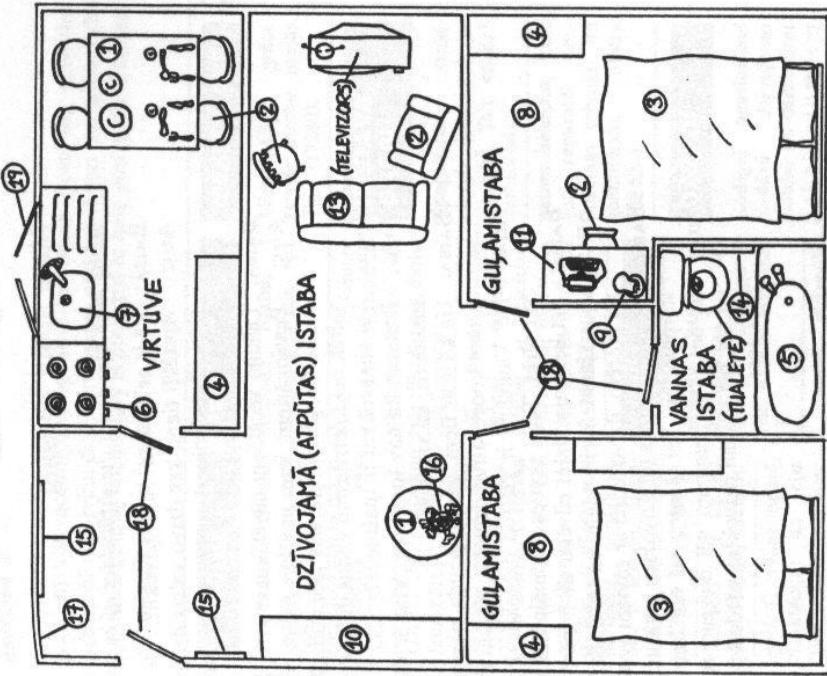
Language in action

Look at the floor plan. Using all the prepositions and ways of expressing spatial relations that you know (with the help of the Glossary at the back of the book), write complete sentences in Latvian to answer the question **Kur atrodas ...?**

- spogulis
- skapji (visi)
- pīts
- gultas (abas)
- lampa
- divāns
- grāmatas
- pukes
- krēslī
- rakstāmmašīna (typewriter)
- glāzes, karotes, naži un dākšīnas (glasses, spoons, knives (sg. nazis) and forks)
- blodas un trauki (bowls and plates)
- drēbes

Additional vocabulary (the furniture has been numbered to help you):

gulamistaba	dzīvojamā istaba,
virtuve	atpūtas istaba
vannas istaba	galds



krēsls	chair (2)
gulta	bed (3)
skapis	cupboard (4)
vanna	bathrub(5)
pīts	oven (6)
izietne	sink (7)
paklājs	carpet (8)
lampu	lamp (9)
grāmatu plauksts	bookshelf (10)
rakstāngalds	desk (11)

Dialogue 2

More about housing

Baiba asks Aija about the difficulties of everyday life in a Riga flat

BAIBA: Kā ir ar ērtībām šādā dzīvoklī?

AUA: Apstākli tiem, kas dzīvo valsts dzīvokļos, ir joprojām loti grūti. Pakalpojumi maksā dārgi, un ziņām vēl papildus jāmaksā par apkuri.

BAIBA: Laikam vecākiem cilvēkiem ir grūti iztikt.

AUA: Pensionāriem, kam nav kas palīdz, ir sevišķi grūti. Joprojām vecā māte, piemēram, nav labi nodrošināta. Viņa dzīvo jau vairāk nekā četrdesmit gadus divistabu dzīvoklī Ilgūcīemā. Vai viņa īrē vai ir īpašniece?

AUA: Protams, ka nav īpašniece. Viņa ir tikai īrniece. Joprojām maksā īri, kā viennēr.

BAIBA: Un kā ir ar tiem, kam ir nauda lai nopirktu dzīvokli? Vai, pērkot kooperatīvo dzīvokli, viņiem ir jāstājās kādā rindā?

AUA: Nē. Vienkārši ir jāatrod dzīvoklis, ko pārdom, un tad to var pirkst. Tikai skaites studinājumus avīzēs?

BAIBA: Bet lielakajai dalai cilvēku tie ir pārāk dārgi?

AUA: Jā, ari jauniem cilvēkiem, un tādēļ tik daudz jaunu cilvēku, ari precēto, dzīvo kopā ar saviem vecākiem.

BAIBA: Pie mums mājas un dzīvokļus pērk un pārdom ar aģentūru starpinieciņu. Vai tādas ir ari šeit Latvijā?

AUA: Jā, bet tā ir jauna un vēl diezgan reta pārādība. Ir ari izsoles, bet parasti dzīvokļus pārdom paši to īpašnieki tiesi pircējiem.

Vocabulary

ērtība	comfort, convenience	maka	fee, payment
joprojām	still (more emphatic than vēl)	augsts	high
pakalpojums	service (gas, heating, etc.)	pensionārs	pensioner
apkure	heating	nodrošināt	provide (for)
papilds	addition, supplement	Ilgūcīems	a western suburb of Riga

Language points

The past passive participle

Mana vecā māte, piemēram, nav labi nodrošināta.

My old mother, for example, is not well provided for.

The past passive participle of the verb, expresses what has been done to the subject or object that it refers to, rather than what has been done by it (active participle). It is very simple to form; simply add the appropriate adjectival ending (indicating the appropriate number, gender, case and definiteness/indefiniteness), to the infinitive of the verb. *Nodrošināt*, for instance, is the infinitive of the verb 'to provide for'; by adding the appropriate adjectival ending we create the participle 'provided for'. Again, we read in the dialogue:

tik daudz jaunu cilvēku, ari precēo, dzīvo kopā ar saviem vecākiem.

so many young people, even the married ones, live together with their parents.

Here *precēo* is the definite genitive plural (both genders) form of the past passive participle of *precēt* 'marry'.

Present continuous

Viņa dzīvo jau vairāk nekā četrdesmit gadus divistabu istabu dzīvoklī.

She has been living for more than forty years in a two-roomed flat.

Latvian has no direct equivalent of the English 'has been ...ing' continuous present tense. Instead, to convey the same idea of action continuing into the present, we use the simple present tense, sometimes with **jau** 'already' for added emphasis.

The agent noun ending -nieks/niece

Various types of endings can be added to the stems of other words to make nouns indicating doers or agents; we have already met the ending **-ājs/-āja** (or **-ējs/-ēja**) which is added to verb stems. The ending **-nieks** (m.), **-niece** (f.) is generally added to *noun* stems to indicate the holder of a particular status or quality. In this passage we met the (feminine) nouns **īrniece** (tenant) and **īpašniece** (owner). Other examples: **pavalsnieks** 'citizen', **saimnieks** 'landlord', **ridznieks** 'inhabitant of Riga' and their feminine counterparts.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Her flat is provided with all conveniences.
- 2 The landlord is well paid.
- 3 Latvia is a rarely visited country.
- 4 For (as long as) three years my sister has been looking for a well-built house.
- 5 For young married people it is hard to get a good flat.
- 6 You will have to stand in the queue ('will have to': **būs + Jā...).**

Exercise 2

Insert the correct participial form of the verb in parentheses:

- 1 Mēs neko nesasniedzam, (stāvēt) rindā.
- 2 Valsts dzīvokļi vēl nav (privatizēt).
- 3 Kaimiņa ģimene dzīvo kopā ar savu (precēt) meitu.
- 4 Vai vini, (irēt) savu dzīvokli, maksā daudz naudas?
- 5 Mana māsa, (skartties) studinājums, (beigt) atrada jaunu māju.
- 6 Taču diemžēl, (zvanīt) īpašniekam, viņa uzzināja, ka māja jau ir (pārdot).

Exercise 3

Look at the accompanying advertisements from the classified section of a Latvian daily newspaper and see if you can answer the questions below. Vocabulary is provided to help you in the Glossary at the back of the book.

PĀRDOD	TIE	MEKLĒ DARBU
2 istabu dzīvokli (valsts, 2.stāvs, telefons) kopā ar garāzu (privāto) blakus mājai, Purviemā. Tālr. 360473	studente istabu, 1 istabas dzīvokli, lēti. atvede darbu mājās. Tālr. 7172801.	bilansēpējīga grāmātika, 1 atvele darbu mājās. Tālr. 7172801.
GAZ 24 furgonu jaunmārupē. Cena pēc vicošanās. Tālr. 933659, 933262.	darbiniecē dzīvokli ar ērtībam un telefonu, vēlām cenu. Tālr. 225467, darba tipogrāfijas strādnieci. (pārzinēji) ar pieredzi. Tālr. 468813 darbdiennās.	
Opel Omega Caravan (2,0 i), 1988g., zila nobraukums 146 000km, ideāla stāvokli, nerisējīgs, nepārkārīots, 5 ātrumi, signālizācija, stereo. Cena Ls 2733. Tālr. 228013.	žurnālists ar gimeni – dzīvojamo plātību ar telefonu. Vārds no īpašnieka. Tālr. 4657725 no 9 līdz 20, 260902 vakaros.	N/C automehānikām, kurš var remontēt iekraušanas tehniku un galddiekam. Miera ielā 62-1.
		IZĪRĒ
		DĀŽĀDI
GAZ-2I par Ls 80. Tālr. 918206, vakaros.	blakusielpu un balongāzi Pārdaugavā. Godīgai piešķīvotajiem platību un dārzu pret pākāpojumiem mājsaimniecībā. Tālr. 425896 no plkst 17.	
govī (Latvijas brūnā, Sīlaktācija) un telju. Tālr. 914096, vakaros.	istabu dzīvokli, dārzu un garāžu Jelgavā. Rakstīt: a/k 63, Riga, LV-1002.	
		PĒRK
2 istabu dzīvokli Purviemā vai Teikā. Interesē visi varianti. Tālr. 360086.		

1 What does the journalist specify that he wants to rent (**īrēt**)?

2 What does the student say she wants to rent?

3 What is available for hire (**īzīret**) in Pārdaugava?

- 4 What is available for an honest female pensioner?
 5 What is available for hire in Jelgava?
 6 Describe the Opel Omega car that is for sale.
 7 Find an animal for sale. What is it?
 8 What is for sale at Purviens?
 9 A radio employee has something for hire. What is it?
 10 What jobs are on offer in Peace Street (Miera iela)?

10 Ārsta vizīte

The doctor comes

Reading passage

How people used to live

But what kind of houses did Latvians occupy in past centuries? This is something that our visitors were able to see when they visited the Brīvdabas muzejs (Open-air Museum) in Riga (see lesson 6). Here is a passage from a description of the way Latvians used to live (from a guidebook to the Museum). Use the Glossary at the back of the book to help you. Pay particular attention to the use of participles

Tāpat kā citām Ziemeļaustrumeiropas tautām, arī latviešiem bijymateriāls bija koks. Māla kleķa, akmens vai kieģeļu ēku celtneiба ir raksturīga 19. un 20. gadsimtu periodam, un arī tad tikai aisevišķām celtņu grupām, zemniecības slānijem vai apvidai. Par visenākajām – stāvu koku ēķām – saglabājušās tika atminas tautas dziesmās, un savā visvienkāršākajā veidā – vidzemnieku gūlbīves, kurus senākos laikos liktas tieši uz zemes, pamatnīcāi (apakšējo vainagu balķiem) izvēloties ozola vai sveķainus balķus.

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- parts of the body in Latvian
- how to address people
- diminutives
- verb participles

Dialogue 1

Calling the doctor

One morning, when the family is planning to go out for the day, little Dzidra complains that she is feeling unwell

BAIBA: Mēs visi gatavojamies iet ārā, bet tu esi vēl gultā! Kas tev kāis?

DZIDRA: Nezinu, bet es jūtos slikti. BAIBA: Vai tu esi slimā? Vai tev sāp galva?

DZIDRA: Jā, nazliet sāp galva, un arī kaklis. BAIBA: Tev ir karsta piere, laikam tev ir paaugstināta temperatūra. Tu nedrīksti šodien iet ārā. Tev jāpaliek gultā. Es izsauksu ārstu.

DZIDRA: Bet es ļoti gribēju braukt Iedz!

BAIBA: Jā, jā, es saprotu, bet tu esi saslimusi. Bez tevis mēs nekur nebrauksim. Vispirms tev jāaizselojas. Tikai tad brauksim.

Vocabulary

gatavoties	prepare, get ready	karsts	hot
kaitēt	harm, hurt (pres. kaiš; kas tev kaiš 'what's wrong with you')	piere	forehead
justies	feel (reflexive: 1st person pres. jūtos)	paaugstināt	raise, increase
		driksēt	be allowed
		līgt	ask, request (pres. līdznu: see lesson 1)
slikts	bad	ārstīgs	doctor
slims	sick, ill	līdz (ar)	(along) with
sāpēt	hurt, ache	saslinīt	fall ill, get sick
kakls	neck; throat	atvesloties	recover

Language points

Phrases

Kas tev kaiš? (or: kaiš)
What's wrong with you? (More literally: What ails you?)

Mān sāp galva.
My head aches.

Notice how in both of these constructions the *dative* of the subject of the feeling is used with the verb in the third person. **Kaiš** is an irregular (but more common) form of **kaitēt**, from **kaitēt** 'harm, hurt'.

Parts of the body

You already know **galva**, **kāja**, **roka**, **plecs**, and now **kakls**, **seja**. Here are some more:

mugura	back	zobs	tooth
mute	mouth	mēle	tongue (also 'language')
acs (f.)	eye	bārda	beard
deguns	nose	kruīs (f.)	breast, bosom
mati (pl.)	hair	piere	forehead
		pirksīs	finger (kājas pirksīs 'toe')

Dialogue 2

The doctor comes

The doctor arrives and Baiba shows him in

Ārst:	Labīt! Vai jūs aicinājāt ārstu?
BABA:	Jā, mēs gaidījām jūs. Dienēžel ir mana meita saslimusi.
Ārst:	Kur atrodas mazā slīmmiecie?
BABA:	Šeit ir viņas gulamistaba. Lūdzu.
Ārst:	Labīt, jaunkundzīt! Kā tev klājas?
DZINDRA:	Es jūtos līkti. Man sāp galva un kakls, un ēstgrības nāv, gribu tikai dzert. Man ir mokošas galvassāpes.
Ārst:	Izmērīsim tev temperaturu. Atver muti drusciņ. Ta! Un tagad novelk pidzāmas jaku, lai es varētu izklausīt plaūšas! Vai tu stipri klepo? Nē? Tikai nedaudz. Elpo dzilī! Ta! Paskatīsimies termometru. Jā, ir gan paaugstināta: 38,2.
DZINDRA:	Vai tā ir augsta?
Ārst:	Tā ir augstiā nekā normāla, bet nav tik nopietna. Tas pāries, un tu driz atveselosies! Tagad atver vēreiz muti un paskatīsim rīkli. Saki: a!
DZINDRA:	A!
Ārst:	Labi. Hm, neliels pietūkums. Acīmredzot tev ir gripa, meitenīt! Pāšlaik ir daudz cilvēku, kas slimio ar gripu. Es uzrakstišu recepti. Bet tev jāpaliek siltā gulta vismaz trīs dienas. Un ja tu triju dienu laikā neatveselosies, tad tavai mātei jāpieliekana man vēreiz, jā?
DZINDRA:	Jā, paldies, ārsta kungs.

Vocabulary

aicināt	call, summon,	mokōš	splitting, racking
slīmmieks (m.)	invite	(mocīt)	'torment, torture'
slīmmiecie (f.)	patient, invalid	galvassāpes	(pl. only)
jaunkundze	miss (diminutive)	izmērīt	measure
klāties	be, get on (Kā tev klājas? 'how are you?')	drusciņ	a little take off
nelabs	bad, sick, unwell	pidzāma	pyjamas jaka

izklāsīt	listen to	nopietns	serious
plaušas	lungs	drīz	soon
klepot	cough	rīkle	throat
nedaudz	a bit, a little,	pietūkums	swelling
	slightly	gripa	influenza
elpot	breathe	meitene	girl
dzelš	deep	recepte	prescription (also: ‘recipe’)
paskatīties	take a look at	piezvanīt	ring up
termometrs	thermometer	vēlreiz	again, once more
normāls	normal		

Language points

Diminutives

The doctor greets Dzidra like this:

Labrit, jaunkundžit!

Good morning, (little) miss!

Jaunkundžit is the vocative case form of **jaunkundžite**, which in turn is a diminutive form of **jaunkundze** ‘young lady, miss’. Diminutives are a very common feature of Latvian, not only to express smallness, but also endearment and emotional closeness. For example, in poetry we might find words such as **saulīte** ‘little sun’, which does not imply smallness, but rather a positive emotional attachment. Later the doctor calls her **meiteņait** ‘little girl’ as well. The principal diminutive endings are:

-ītis (m.), -īte (f.):	brālis brother	brālītis upite
-īns (m.), -īna (f.):	upe river	dēlinš dēlinš

Other less common diminutive endings are **-elis/-ele** (**puisis** ‘boy’ gives **puiseļis**); **-ene** (f.), **-ens** (usually masculine) (**tejš** ‘calf’ gives **teleņš**); **-tiņš/-tiņa** (**akmens** ‘stone’ gives **akmentiņš**).

Addressing people

Dzidra thanked the doctor like this:

Jā, paldies, ārstā kungs. Yes, thanks, (Mr) doctor.

It is quite common in Latvian to address people using both their

title and their marital status. Notice how the title appears in the genitive before the other term of address, which might be **kungs** ‘Mr’, **kundze** ‘Mrs’, or, as we saw above, **jaunkundze** ‘Miss’. Likewise, if we address a person by using their surname and one of these titles, the surname appears in the genitive:

Miesnieka kungs
Miesnieces **kundze**

Mr Miesnieks
Mrs Miesnieks

(Names ending in **-nieks** have the feminine ending **-niece**, like the words from which they are derived: **Miesnieks** means ‘butcher’.)

Miesnieces jaunkundze
Miss Miesnieks

Future tense of reflexive verbs

The doctor told Dzidra:

Tas pāries, un tu drīz atveselosies!

It will pass, and you’ll soon be better!

Forming the future tense is a simple matter of adding the reflexive ending **-jes** to the future tense of the active verb. In the sentence above, the first verb is active, the second reflexive. For example:

es celšos	I
tu celšies	you
viņš celšies	he
mēs celšimies	we
jūs celšieties	you
viņi celšies	they

will get up

The **adjectival present participle** ending **-oš-**

Dzidra told the doctor:

Man ir mokosas galvassāpes. I have splitting headaches.

We have already met other kinds of present participle in Latvian. The one used here, which is formed by adding **-oš-** + the appropriate adjectival ending (for gender, case and definiteness) to the *first-person singular present tense of the verb*, is used *only* as an adjective, unlike **-ot**, which is not declinable. Here are a few examples:

mocīt (es moku)	torture	> mokošas	splitting
tečēt (es teku)	flow	> galvassāpnes	headaches
krist (es kritu)	fall	> tekošs ūdens	flowing water
degst (es degu)	burn	> kritoša lapa	falling leaf

Note that the participle of the verb 'to be' is **esōšs**. Note also that the word for 'future' or 'to-be' in the **adjectival sense** (as in **topošs tēvs** 'future father/father-to-be') is **topošs**, formed from **tapt** (es **topu**) 'become'.

Exercise 1

Translate this dialogue into Latvian:

- Good morning, Dr Liepiņš!
- Good morning, Mr Prieditis! How are you?
- My back hurts. Please could you look at it?
- Yes, of course. How long has it been hurting you?
- For (= 'already') three days, since I helped my mother carry her luggage to the bus station.
- Please remove your shirt (= **kreklis**). Does it hurt here?
- Yes, it hurts a lot. It's a burning pain.
- And here too?
- No, not so much.
- It would be best to do an X-ray (**rentgēna caurskate**). Could you come back tomorrow to do that?
- Yes, doctor.
- Good. Go to the medical centre (**poliklīnika**) and talk to (**sameklēt**) the sister.
- Thank you, doctor. Good-bye!

Exercise 2

- If you are working with a partner or teacher, improvise a similar conversation with a doctor or dentist (**zobārstis**) about a pain in your:
- | | | | |
|-------|-------|---------|--------|
| 1 leg | 2 arm | 3 tooth | 4 eyes |
|-------|-------|---------|--------|

Exercise 3

Language in use

- Humour**
- Here are some Latvian jokes (from the newspaper *Diena*). Additional vocabulary is in the glossary at the end of the book.

- Sakiet, lūdzu, ar ko jūs barojat šo vistu?
- Kāpēc jūs tas interesē?
- Es ari grībētu būt tik slaida.

Gaitieni sarunājas divi kolēģi. Garām pāriet redakcijas jaunā un glītā operatorē. Viens no viņiešiem, noskatot aizcejošo meiteni, saka:

- Hm, īsta skaistule, vai ne?
- Pieci bērni, – mierīgi atbild otrs.
- Viņai? Nevar būt!
- Nevis viņai, bet tevi!

Zooveikalā ienāk pārskaities pircējs.

- Es pie jums pagājušā nedēļā nopirku kanārijputniu. Jūs apgalvojāt, ka tie dzīvo pat desmit gadu, bet manējais nākamajā dienā nomira.
- Viņam tā laikam bija desmitā dzimšanas diena.
- Saki, Anna, vai tavas māsas līgavainis ir bagāts cilvēks?
- Laikam jau nē, jo tēvs visu laiku atkārtio – ak, nabaga jaunais cilvēks ...

Izejot no veikala, sieva saka vīram:

- Panem, lūdzu, bērnu un attod man olas. Tu tās vari nejausi nomest un sasist.

Reading passage

*Anna Brigadere (1861–1933) has for a long time been one of Latvia's best-loved authoresses. Here is a short passage from her novel *Kvēlošā lokā* ('In a Blazing Circle', 1928), which looks back at events in Latvia before the First World War and independence*

Ar Vāidas starpniecību Ziedīna ģimene dabūja bēriņiem apavus un drēbes, arī pārtikas produktus, lai gan aprobežotā mērā, jo taurēm un pašķrejošiem ratiem Vāida patureja pie sevis un cerēja tās uz Ziemassvētkiem reālizēt.

Kādu dienu Pētu kalpone Kristīne, mājiniekiem sēdot' pie galda, pačukstēja Vāidai: 'Iznāciet nu kuknā! Tur jūs kāda meklē.'

'Kas tā tāda ir?' Vāida jautāja.

'To es jums nevaru sacīt,' atbildēja meita.

Visi pasmejās. Zināja jau, ka Kristīne pat visiķdienskākām lietām mil dot noslēpuma nokrāsu.

Virtuvē gaidīja Irma.

'Zināt ko,' vija, padevusi labdienu, gāja tiesi uz mēri, 'es varu dabūt vietu kādā mazgātavā, pie velas pienīšanas, bet tur man jāprot vāiski. Es nu atmācu pie jums. Vai nevarat mani druskū pamācīt?'

1. **Mājiniekiem sēdot** 'while the household sat'; if the subject of the participle is different from the subject of the main clause, it takes the dative.

2. Note carefully the use of the verb prefix **p-** in this passage to indicate a temporary or momentary action.

Vocabulary

apavi	footwear	skanot	'needy person'
produkts	product	taure	sound
aprobežots	limited	rati	trumpet
trūkums	shortage, need,	rati	carr (pāskrejot)
	poverty	rati	rati 'carts that move by themselves'
	(trūkumcietējs)		

* The publishers reserve the right to change prices without notice.
In case of difficulty, send payment with order to Routledge Ltd, TIFs, Chetham House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, or to Routledge Inc., 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001, USA.

If you have been unable to obtain the course pack, the double cassette (ISBN 0-415-11798-4) can be ordered separately through your bookseller or, £14.99* incl. VAT
ISBN 0-415-11798-4
Cassettes Latvian, Mosely.

Please supply one/two double cassette(s) of
\$24.99 (Can. \$34.99)*
Please close payment with order.
 I enclose payment with order.
 Please debit my Access/Mastercharge/Mastercard/Visa/American Express. Account number:
Name Address

CASSETTES ORDER FORM

Please supply one/two double cassette(s) of

Please debit my Access/Mastercharge/Mastercard/Visa/American Express. Account number:
\$24.99 (Can. \$34.99)*

I enclose payment with order.



BIBLIOTECA GENERAL

UNIVERSITATIS LATVIAE

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF LATVIA

LIBRAIRIE DE L'UNIVERSITÉ DE LETTONIE

UNIVERSITY LIBRARY OF LATVIA

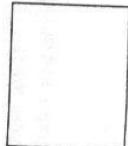
UNIVERSITY LIBRARY OF LAT

paturēt	hold, keep	nokriša	hint, tint, shade
Ziemassvētki	Christmas	padot	give (greeting)
realizēt	carry out,	mērķis	target, goal
pačukstēt	implement	mazgātava	laundry
iznākt	whisper	vela	linen, washing
kukpa	come (out)	pieņemšana	reception
pasmieties	(Russian) kitchen	vāciski	German
ikdienīšķs	laugh (a little)	atnākt	come, arrive
mīlēt	everyday	drušku	a bit, a little
noslēpums	love	pamācīt	teach

Order from your bookseller or from:

ROUTLEDGE LTD
TPS
Cheriton House
North Way
Andover
Hants
SP10 5BE
ENGLAND

ROUTLEDGE INC.
29 West 35th Street
New York
NY 10001
USA



11 Tīrgus dārījumi

Business dealings

123

JĀNIS: Vai tad tiek ievests citās zemēs ražots alus?

GUNĀRS: Jā, ārzemju alus patlaban 'iebrūk' Latvijā. Un turklāt visu mūsu kaimiņvalstu lauksaimniecība tiek subsīdēta, arī alus miežu audzēšana.

JĀNIS: Bet Latvijā ne?

GUNĀRS: Nē, un redzi, gan ārzemju miežu audzētāji, gan alus darītāji atrodas krietiņi izdevīgākā stāvoklī nekā mūsējie. Tāpēc mūsu ražotājiem ir grūti izturēt konkurenci.

Bet cik lielā mērā Latvijas darītavas ir atkarīgas no ārzemju piegādātājiem?

GUNĀRS: Tā kā mēs paši samērā maz audzējam alus miežus, darītavas tiek spiestas iepirkīt ārzemēs, ne tikai miežus, bet arī apjuķus.

Un latviešiem garšo arī ārzemēs ražotais alus?

JĀNIS: Garšo, bet tomēr mums patik pašmājas ražotās šķirnes, kas tiek darītas pēc vecā pārauga. Un tad gandrīz katram rajonam ir pašam sava darītava, kurās alus ir sevišķi iecienīts. Piemēram, vidzemesniem ir allaž garšojs Cēsu alus, rīdziniekiem savas darītavas 'Aldara' alus, bauskeniekim vairāk patik Bauskā ražotais alus. Tādā veidā alus brūvētāji spēj konkurēt ar ārzemju ražotājiem.

JĀNIS: Jā, man jāpieliktei tev, ka Latvijas alus ir garšgs. Ārzemju ražotāji dižojas ar lepnām pudeļiem un dārgu reklāmu, bet ja tā pavērtē, jāsecina, ka pašmājas alus ir labiks.

Vocabulary

nogaršot	taste, try	gaume	taste
dažads	various, different	izvest	export
darītava	brewery	āržemes	foreign countries (uz āržemēm 'abroad')
ražot	produce	lietot	use
gandrīz	almost	konservants	preservative
šķirne	kind, sort	glabāt	keep
varens	mighty, great	qemt vērā	take into consideration
cienītājs	admirer,	appreciator	consume (patērētājs 'consumer')
valsts (l.)	country (Baltijas valstis 'the Baltic countries' (Latvia, Lithuania, Estonia))	patērēt	current volume apjomis
			satisfy

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- the passive voice of the verb
- 'yours', 'mine', 'his' and other possessive expressions
- names of inhabitants of places
- word formation

Dialogue 1

Business talks

Jānis would like to establish a few business contacts for his Australian company while he is in Latvia, so he asks Gunārs about the industry in which he works, the brewing industry

JĀNIS: Līgo vakarā, kad mēs dzērām alu, man bija iespēja nogaršot dažādus alus. Tur bija tik plaša izvēle! Pie mums ražo to pašu šķirni!

GUNĀRS: Redzi, mēs esam varena alus darītāju un cienītāju tauta. Katrā Baltijas valstī ir daudz alus ražotāju, visām gaumēm.

JĀNIS: Bet kāpēc jūsu alus netiek ievests uz āržemēm?

GUNĀRS: Lai kam tāpēc, ka mūsu darītavas nelieto konservantus. Tādēj alu nevar ilgi glabāt. Un nēmot vērā patērētāju skaitu, pašreizējais ražošanas apjoms nespēj apmierināt pāsmāju tirgu.

JĀNIS: Kāpēc?

GUNĀRS: Cik es saprotu, patlaban neviena no Latvijas darītavām nestrādā ar pilnu jaudu.

pāsmāju	domestic	apnis	hop be to the taste of (man garšo
cik es saprotu	as far as I know	garšot	'I like (the taste)'
patlaban	just now, at present		kind, sort pattern, model
strādāt	work	šķirne	particularly fancy, favour, like
pilns	full	paraugs	always
jauda	capacity, power	sevišķi	the biggest
ievest	import	iecienīt	Latvian brewery, in Riga
turklāt	besides	allaž	brew (branch of) industry
lauksaimniecība	agriculture	'Aldaris'	agree (pres.
subsidēt	subsidize		piekriku, past piekriku)
gan ... gan ...	both ... and ...		delicious, tasty show off
kriens	considerable,		luxurious, splendid
mīnējš	substantial		compare (a little)
tāpēc	ours		conclude
izturet	therefore	brūvēt	
konkurence	withstand	nozare	
	competition		
	(konkurēt	piekrīst	
	'compete')		
mers	measure, extent, degree	garšīgs	
atkarīgs	dependent	dīzoties	
piegādāt	supply	leps	
tā kā	since, as		
maz	little (adv.),	pavērtēt	
	slightly		
splēst	compel, force	sezināt	
iepirkt	purchase, buy in		

The *passive voice* is what we commonly use when we wish to focus attention not on the doer of the action, but on the person or thing acted upon. In Latvian there are various kinds of impersonal or passive construction that we can use in various situations; we have already seen, for instance, that a sentence need not have a subject in Latvian. But perhaps the commonest kind of impersonal construction is the passive voice formed with the verb *tiekt*, which we have already met. On its own, it means 'become' or 'get', but with the past passive participle, it corresponds to the passive in English. In a passive sentence, the logical object of the action becomes the subject, and appears in the nominative case, and the participle agrees with it in number and gender:

Alius netiek izvests Beer is not exported.
Alius tiek ievests Beer is imported.

(Note also the word order in the second sentence: the subject is *citās zemēs* *ražots* *alius*, lit. 'in-other-countries-produced beer'. Again in the dialogue Gunārs said:

mūsu kaimiņvalstu lauksaimniecība tiek subsīdēta.
our neighbours' agriculture is subsidized.

Here *subsīdēta* is feminine, to agree with *lauksaimniecība*.
'Yours', 'mine', 'ours'

Gunārs said in the dialogue that foreign producers were
kritēti izdevīgākā stāvoklī nekā mūsējie
in a much more favourable position than ours

Special pronoun forms are derived from the possessive adjectives *mans*, *tavs* and so on to represent the equivalent of the English 'mine', 'yours', etc. They are declined like definite adjectives, and are marked for gender, number and case. They are usually found in the definite form:

mans	> manējais
tavs	> tavējais
vija/vinas	> viņējais
mūsu	> mūsējais
jūsu	> jūsējais
viņu	> viņējais
savs	> savejais

Language points

The passive voice

Look at these examples from the dialogue:

- Bet kāpēc jūsu alus *netiek izvests uz ārzemēm*?
But why is your beer not *exported abroad*?
Vai tad *tiekt ievests* citās zemēs *ražots alijs*?
So is beer *produced* in other countries imported then?

Names of inhabitants of places

We have already seen that people from Riga are called **īdžinieki** (*f. īdžinieces*). Most other names of inhabitants of places in Latvia are formed along the same lines, but some of them are slightly unpredictable. In the dialogue, for instance, we saw that people from the town of **Bauska** are called **baušķenieki**. The inhabitants of Latvia's four provinces are called **kurzemei** and **vidzemnieki** from Kurzeme and Vidzeme, but **zemgali** from Zemgale and **latgalieši** from Latgale. Each case has to be learned separately.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 My grandfather is older than yours.
- 2 Yes, but yours is healthier.
- 3 This bag must be yours, because mine is red.
- 4 Latvia imports some foodstuffs, but also produces its own.
- 5 We grow tomatoes on our farm; do you grow them on yours?
- 6 The second house is ours, and the fifth is theirs.

Exercise 2

Remove the subject (if there is one) from these sentences and make them passive:

- 1 Es nogāžoju dažādu alu šķirnes.
- 2 Katrā Baltijas valstī rāzo au visām gaumēm.
- 3 Mana firma izvēd savus produktus uz ārziņiem.
- 4 Latvieši patēriē au lielā apjomā.
- 5 Ražošanas apjoms apmierina pašmāju tirgu.
- 6 Citas zemes ieved mūsu alu.
- 7 Vini spiež mani grūtā stāvoklī.

Dialogue 2

A business dinner

Over dinner in one of the better restaurants in Riga, Jānis and Baiba are talking about the business side of the restaurant industry with their hosts

Vai šis ir tipisks latviešu restorāns?

Kā tev pateikti, Jāni? Diemžel ne jau visi Latvijas iedzīvotāji ir tik bagāti, lai pusiņotu restorānos. Šādi restorāni ir liešakoties domāti pašmāju bagātniekim un ārziņju tūristiem.

Bet tomēr šis restorāns ir atšķirīgs no tipiskiem rietumu restorāniem.

GUNĀRS: Protams! Latvijas ēšanas un dzersanas tradīcijas ir joprojām atšķirīgas no rietumiem.

JĀNIS: Jā, bet nenoliedzami rietumnieki līdz ar jaunajām ekonomiskajām attiecībām ir ienesuši, arī savu kultūru, vai ne?

BAIBA: Arī pie mums Austrālijā, censās pievilkst ārziņju tūristu naudu ar augsta līmeņa apkalošanu viesnīcās un restorānos.

AUA: Bet kā tu domā, Baioba? Man šķiet, ka pastālk vietējie uzņēmēji vēl tikai sāk apjēgt, ko no viņiem gaida ārziņnieki.

BAIBA: Varbūt, bet ir skaidrs, ka ārziņnieki Latvijā cer sagaidīt augsta līmeņa apkalošanu, jo viņi šeit iegulda un tērē savu naudu.

GUNĀRS: Bet diemžel apkalošanas līmenis Rīgas restorāns ne vienmēr albiļst cenām.

AUA: Lai kam latviešiem ir joprojām maz iespēju ceļot, un tādēļ viņi nevar salīdzināt pašmāju paradumus ar ārziņiem.

JĀNIS: Jā, piemēram šeit ir samērā plaša vīnu un alu izvēle, bet citur Rīgā un Latvijā šādas izvēles laikam nav.

GUNĀRS: Protams. Bet kādu iespaidu tev astājā šī vieta, salīdzinot ar Austrāliju?

JĀNIS: Jūsot patīkami pārsteigts par jauko apkalošanu, un arī par plašo vīnu izvēli.

BAIBA: Vai oficiantiem ir pieņemts dot dzermannaudu?

GUNĀRS: Vini zina, ka Rietumos klienti parasti maksā, teiksims, desmit procentus no rēķina summas lielu dzermannaudu, un šādos restorānos vini gaida no klientiem apmēram to pašu.

Bet ārziņnieki gaida no viņiem, ka dzermannauda tiku plēni. Viesi apmeklē restorānu nevis, lai piedzertos, bet lai atpūstos, baudot labi gatavotus ēdienu un tiem atbilstošus dzērienus.

Vocabulary

tipisks	typical	uzņēmējs	businessman
restorāns	restaurant	apīķēt	realize
Kā pateikt?	What can I say?	skaidrs	clear
iedzīvotājs	inhabitant,	ieguldīt	invest
	resident	celot	travel
pusdienuot	dine, have lunch	salīdzināt	compare
	(pus)dienas	paradums	habit
	'lunch' from	izvēle	choice, selection
pusdiena	'noon'	iespāds	impression
		piedāvāt	offer
lielākoties	mostly	oficiants	waiter
bagānieks	rich man	piemērt	accept, presume,
tūrists	tourist		suppose
atšķirīgs	different		tip
noliegf	deny	dzeramnauða	per cent
ekonomists	economic	procents	bill
attiecība	proportion; (pl.)	rēķins	sum, total
	relations	summa	earn, deserve
	bring (in)	pelnit	guest, visitor (pl.
	culture	viesis	viesi)
	strive, try (pres.	apmeklēt	go to, visit
	cēsīs)	piedzīties	get drunk
	attract	atpūsties	relax, rest
	level, standard	baudīt	enjoy
	service (apkāpot)	gatavot	prepare
	'serve')	ēdienis	meal
viensīca	hotel		
vietējs	local		

Vocabulary

bagānieks	rich man
ārzemnieks	foreigner
rietumnieks	Westerner

and so on.

Another suffix we already know is **-šana**, which is added to active verb stems (note that it is **šanas** with reflexive verbs) to form gerunds. Note the irregular form of **ēšana** 'eating', from **ēst** 'eat'. From this same verb we also get **ēdiens** 'meal'. Note also the word **vietējs** 'local', which is derived from **vieta** 'place' with the same ending as the possessive pronouns given above.

Exercise 3

Insert passive forms of the appropriate verb in parentheses in the present tense:

- Jaunas ekonomiskas attiecības (ienest) Latvijā.
- Tūristu nauda (pievilk) mūsu zemē.
- Augsta līmena apkāpošana (sagaidīt) no oficiantiem.
- Abu valstu dzīves līmeni (salīdzināt).
- Dzeramnauða (pelnīt).
- Labi ēdieni un dzērieni (baudīt).
- Oficiants (pateikt).
- Mūsu valoda šeit (saprast).

Language in action ☺

Below is a menu from a good Riga restaurant. Study it, choose what you would like to order and tell the waiter what you and your friend(s) want, using the guidelines below. If you are working with a partner, one of you can play the waiter.

Language points

Notes on word formation

There are many suffixes which can be added to the stems of Latvian words to create new meanings or shades of meaning, many of which we have already met. On page 126 above we saw, for example, how the suffix **-nieks/-niene** can be added to place-names to indicate their residents; the same suffix can be added to other words too:

» <i>Ēdienu karte</i> »
☒ <i>UZZODĀS</i> ☒
<i>Stropā zupa</i>
<i>Jaukti laipi salāti ar mērci</i>
<i>Pīlītības olas ar kūkenām</i>
<i>Sifēk krējumā</i>
☒ <i>GĀLĀVĒNIE ĒDIEŅU</i> ☒
<i>Pīlītības briezpiena pankūķus</i>
<i>Makaronu-siera sacepuums</i>
<i>Celīši vīnā</i>
<i>Rīsu piāns</i>
<i>Kāršņi cepta sārīne</i>
<i>Spēka pīrādzīni</i>
☒ <i>SĀLDIE ĒDIEŅU</i> ☒
<i>Cepi ābofi ar putu krējumu</i>
<i>Vanilijas pudījs</i>
<i>Magnomaizītes</i>
<i>Zemenes ar medu</i>
<i>Augsu torte</i>
<i>Svāigti augļi</i>
<i>Vanilijas salātējums</i>
☒ <i>DZĒRĒIEŅU</i> ☒
<i>Teja, kājīja</i>
<i>Citrona limonāde</i>
<i>Alus</i>
<i>Balīvīns</i>
<i>Sarkanvīns</i>

The waiter will show it to you. Choose one wine, but your friend prefers beer.

The waiter then asks if you want wine by the glass or bottle. You decide to have a glass.

Later, the waiter asks if you want dessert or coffee. You only want coffee, but your friend only wants dessert.

Ask for the bill. The waiter gives it to you. Ask if this bill includes a service charge. He says it doesn't.

Thank him and pay cash. Wait for your change. (Leave a tip at your discretion.)

Reading passage

Interview with a businessman

Here is a newspaper interview, slightly abridged, with a young Latvian businessman about the problems of running a business in Latvia today. Notice that a few English business terms are used in their Latvian forms!

Kāds notikums, lēmums u.tml. (= un tam līdzīgi 'and so on') ieteikmēja jūsu biznesu pagājnedēļai?

Man pagājnedēļā atkal iznāca ražēties par muitas lietām. Tā kā esam vācu automašīnu oficiālais diileris Latvijā, mūsu pirmais uzdevums, protams, ir šīs preces nogādāšana pāri Latvijas robežai. Unte nu atkal kārtējo reizi? nācās pārliecīaties, cik neracionāla un nepārdomāta ir kārtība, kā noformē, piemēram, automobiļu ievešanu uz laiku. Tieki prasīts, lai šī prece vispirms tiek ievietota noliktavā, un tikai tad mēs varam ar to rikoties tālāk pēc saviem iestākiem.³ Iespējams, ka tik stingra kontrole citām precēm ir vajadzīga, bet automašīnām, manuprāt, tā jau ir varākkārtīgi nodrošināta. Un galu galā' mūsu valdībai vajadzētu tieši veicināt preču ievešanu un izvešanu no Latvijas, ja patiesi gribam būt tranzīta zeme.

Kāds uzņēmums jums ir?

Mūsu firma ir kādas vācu automašīnu markas oficiālais diileris Latvijā. Mēs pārdomām un apkalpojam automašīnas – gan jaunas, gan vecas. Piedāvājam pilnīgu servisu, lai pircējs mūsu automobili justos droši un ērti. Esam izvērsuši arī rezerves daļu tirdzniecību, remontējam automašīnas. Mūsu firmā nodarbināti 27 cilvēki.

Tell the waiter that you would like to start with the soup, or other starter, and choose something different for your friend. The waiter will then ask you what you would like as a main course.

Choose two different dishes; one for yourself and one for your friend. Ask if the vegetables are fresh.

The waiter will say they are quite fresh, but that he especially recommends the potatoes.

Ask to see the wine list.

12 Sports

Sport

Uzsākām savu darbību 1991. gadā, un nu jau diezgan droši varam teikt, ka šai jomā esam uzkrājuši vērtīgu pieredzi.

1 **Pagājusnedēļ:** short colloquial form of **pagājušā nedēļa** 'last week'.

2 **Akkal kārtējo reizi:** 'once more, yet again'.

3 **Rikoties tālak pēc saviem iestatīem:** 'go on acting at one's own discretion'.

4 **Galu galā:** 'in the end, after all'.

5 **Justos:** subjunctive of the reflexive verb **justies** 'feel'.

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- the superlative degree of the adjective
- names of countries and nationalities
- negating verbal participles
- verbs of becoming

Dialogue 1

Talking about sport

Jānis and his family, especially Imanis, are keen sports fans in Australia, but in Latvia they find that different sports altogether are popular

IMANTS: Onkul, vai mēs varēsim apmeklēt kādu futbola spēli?

GUNĀRS: Vairbūt būs iespēja, bet vai tu zini, kāds ir vismīlākais sporta veids šeit Latvijā?

IMANTS: Vairbūt ledushokejs?

GUNĀRS: Nē, bet parasti to sauc vienkārši par hokeju Latvijā. Tas ir viens no ziemas sporta veidiem.

IMANTS: Tennis?

GUNĀRS: Arī tenis labprāt spēlē, bet mūsu vismīlākais sporta veids ir basketbols.

IMANTS: Basketbols? Vai Latvija ir slavena basketbola izlase?

GUNĀRS: Jā, mūsu komandas bieži spēle Eiropas sacīktēs. Nesen Latvijas komanda aizbrauca uz Spāniju, un vakar tur

notika spēle.

IMANTS: Vai mūsu komanda uzvarēja?

GUNĀRS: Protams! Rezultāts bija 77:68 (sepiñdesmit septīni pret sešdesmit astoni). Viņiem arī pērn bija tie paši pretinieki

- Spānija, vēl neuzvarētie Eiropas čempioni. Pirmais grozis iekrita tikai pēc pusotras minūtes.
IMANTS:
Vai tu redzēji spēli?
GUNĀRS: Nē, viņi spēlēja Spānijā, un diemžēl spēli nepārraidīja televizijā! Es par to lasiju avīzē. Bet vai tu gribi redzēt basketbolu spēli?
IMANTS: Jā, jo basketbolu mēs spēlējam skolā Adelaidē.
GUNĀRS: Labi! Rīt būs spēle šeit Rīgā, 'Brodēni' spēlēs pret komandu no Daugavpils.

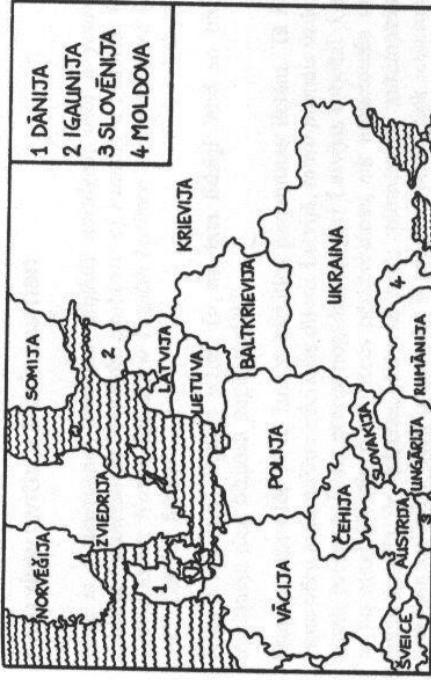
Vocabulary

sports	sport	Spānija	Spain
futbols	football, soccer	spēle	game
ledus	ice	vakar	yesterday
hokejs	hockey (hokejs ar rīpu 'hockey with a puck' is the usual term for 'ice hockey')	uzvarēt	win
		rezultāts	result
		pret	against; versus; towards (+ acc.)
teniss	tennis	pretinieks	opponent
basketbols	basketball	pērn	last year
slavens	famous	uzvarēt	defeat, overthrow
izlase	selection; team	čempions	champion
komanda	team, party	grozs	basket
bieži	often	ielirst	fall in
Eiropa	Europe	lasīt	read
sacīkstes	contest, match	pārraidsīt	broadcast
(pl. only)		televīzija	television
izbraukta	leave, depart		

- 'long', *ilgāks* 'longer'; *dārgs* 'dear', *dārgāks* 'dearer' and so on. The *superlative* ('most') form of the adjective is formed by adding the prefix *vis-* to this comparative form. But note that the superlative form must always have the *definite* adjectival ending: *vismīļākais* 'the most popular' (or: *vispopulārākais*).

Countries and nationalities

We already know that all place-names are feminine in Latvian. This applies just as much to the names of countries. Here is a list of some of the countries more familiar to Latvians. The names of the nationalities are generally formed along the pattern of *latvetis* (m.), *latviete* (f.; note the lower-case initial!).



Igaunija	Estonia	igaunis, igauniete	Estonian
Lietuva	Lithuania	lietuviets, lietuviete	Lithuanian
Somija	Finland	soms, somiete	Finn
Zviedrija	Sweden	zviedrs, zviedriete	Swede
Dānija	Denmark	dānis, dāniete	Dane
Norvēģija	Norway	norvēģis, norvēģiete	Norwegian
Krievija	Russia	krievs, krieviete	Russian
Balkrievija	Belarus		
Lielbritānija	Great Britain		
Vācija	Germany		
Francija	France		

Kāds ir vismīļākais sporta veids šeit Latvijā?
What is the most popular (= 'dearest') kind of sport here in Latvia?
We have already seen how the comparative ('more') form of the adjective is formed by adding the syllable *-āk-* to the stem: *ilgs*

Language points

The superlative degree of the adjective

Itālia	Italy
Spānija	Spain
Čehija	Czech Republic
Ungārija	Hungary
Poļija	Poland
Amerikas	The United States of America
Savienotās Valstis	Canada
Kanāda	Ukraine
Ukraina	Turkey
Turcija	China
Kīna	Japan
Japāna	Dienvidāfrika
Dienvidāfrika	South Africa

Names of languages are formed from the genitive plural of the masculine form of the nationality name: *zviedru valoda, igauņu valoda, krievu valoda* and so on.
The names of the continents are: **Eiropa, Āzija, Āfrika, Ziemeļamerika, Dienvidamerika.**

Negating verbal participles, definite and indefinite

Gunārs commented to Imants that the Latvian team's opponents in Spain were

vēl neuzvarētie Eiropas čempioni the still unbeaten champions of Europe

Just as in English we can negate the participle 'beaten' with the prefix 'un-', so in Latvian we can do the same by adding the usual negative prefix **ne-** to the participle **gāzt** 'beaten'. But we can also make participles definite, just like any other adjective: **neuzvarētie čempioni** 'the unbeaten champions'.

Exercise 1

Fill in the rest of the table of countries and nationalities above, according to the patterns you can find.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Many Latvians live in Canada, the United States, Australia, Great Britain and elsewhere, but of course most Latvians live in Latvia.
- 2 Estonia and Lithuania are our closest neighbours (say: 'neighbour-countries').
- 3 Northern Africa is the hottest part of the world.
- 4 What is the most popular kind of sport in Spain?
- 5 The Finns played against the Swedes yesterday, and the Finns definitely had the best team.
- 6 Some of my dearest friends live in Denmark.
- 7 I have travelled abroad several times, most often to Russia, Belarus and Estonia.
- 8 Until this year the Russians had the best team – they were the unbeaten champions of Europe.

Dialogue 2

A basketball match

The next day, Gunārs takes Imants to watch a basketball game, while the rest of the family, who aren't so interested in sport, are enjoying a day on the beach at Jūrmala

GUNĀRS: Šodien, Imants, mūsu puišu pretinieki ir viena nospecīgākajiem Latvijas komandām, Daugavpils komandām. Vai tu redzi to vīru, ar bumbu rokā?

IMANTS: No Daugavpils komandas, jā?

GUNĀRS: Jā, tieši viņš. Viņš ir viens no atrākajiem spēlētājiem komandā. Redzi, kā viņš skrien uz grozu un iemet bumbu! Divi punkti!

IMANTS: Bet aiz viņa muguras stāv kāds garš Brocēnu spēlētājs, kas – nu, onkul, re! Viņš skrien prom ar bumbu – bumbu tagad? Jā! Arī viņiem divi punkti! Neizšķirts:

GUNĀRS: Tā ir pārtverta! Bloķēts metiens!
IMANTS: Un tagad vini atkal uzbruka, skaities, onkul!

GUNĀRS: Ja! Precīza piespēle, labi! Nu, Imant, vai šī spēle nav tikpat satraucoša kā jūsu futbols?

IMANTS: Jā, un vēl ātrāka! Onkul, vai tu domā, ka es izaugšu pietiekami garš, lai varētu spēlēt basketbolu?
GUNĀRS: Droši vien – bet nu, ā! Tieši grozā, tieši pirms pusaikta pārraukuma! Domāju, ka mūsu puši uzvarēs!

Vocabulary

spēogs	strong	powerful	neizķirts	undecided; equal
bumba	ball		atkal	again
tiesī	just, exactly		pārvērt	intercept
ātrs	quick, fast		bloķēt	block
spēlētājs	player		uzbrukt	attack
iemest	throw in (pres. īemēt)		precīzs	precise, accurate
punkts	point		piespēle	serve
re!	look!		tikpat	just as
prom/projām	away		satraukt	excite (pres. satraue)
sods	penalty		drošs	certain, sure; bold;
metiens	throw (n.)		(droši) vien	'probably, surely'
linija	line			(also) just, hardly
cīnīties	struggle, fight		tikko	half-time
	(pres. cīnīs)		pusaiks	

Language points

Verbs of becoming

Verbs which indicate a change of state, such as **īikt**, **kļūt** and **augt**, for example, may simply take the nominative form of the adjective which indicates the changed state. For example, Imants asked his uncle:

Vai tu domā, ka es izaugšu pietiekami garš, lai varētu spēlēt basketbolu?

Do you think I'll grow tall enough to be able to play basketball?

But when the change of state is indicated by a noun, then we require the preposition **par** followed, as always, by the accusative. For instance, Imants could have asked:

Vai tu domā, ka es kļūsi par basketbola spēlētāju?
 Do you think I'll become a basketball player?

Exercise 3

Translate the following football commentary into Latvian. New words are given in parentheses.

The first half ended unexpectedly in the match (mačs) between 'Gemma' and 'Olimpja' – after an 11 metre penalty kick (stiens) by Krēslīnš. 'Gemma' found themselves with a 1:0 lead (vadība). Only on the sixty-third minute did Kārklinš achieve 1:1, and only in the last ten minutes did Andersons make it a 3:1 victory in favour (labā) of 'Olimpja' with two goals (vārti or gols).

Reading passage

Ādažošs lūst¹ grozi

*Here is a brief report of a basketball game from a newspaper (*Labiņi*, 15 October 1994, p.8). Ādaži is a small town in northern Latvia*

Tikai divas nedēļas risinās Latvijas Junioru līgas čempionāta spēles, bet kas gan tajās nav noticis! Raug,² ceturtdien kārtas centralajā mačā starp 'Metropoli' un 'Dumli' gadijās Latvijas basketbola vēsturē sen nebijis notikums. Ādažnieks Uvis Helmanis, kurš pēc pagājušā sezonas savu svaru palielinājis vēl par vairākiem kilogramiem, iesildoties bija nodomājis ietriekt bumbu grozā no augšas,³ Helmanis izturēja, bet grozs izjuka... Ādažu sporta nama

gaitējos neviens rezerve nolikta koča nebija, un abām komandām roku rokā bija jābrauc uz Rīgu, uz Sporta pilī. Nu jau laukuma saimnieku lomā iejutās 'Dumlie', kas čempionāta lideru mačā nebūt nav mazvārīgi. Nez kā⁴ tagad lems līgas vadoni, bet, pēc iepriekšsastādītā kalendāra, arī otrā apla 'Dumles' un 'Metropoles'

mačam jānotiek Sporta pilī.

1 Lūst: present tense of **lūst** 'break'.

2 Rau(g): 'look, see'.

3 No augšas: 'from above'.

4 Koči: 'basket'.

5 Iejutās: past tense of **iejuties** 'it oneself into'.

6 Nezin(k): 'who knows how'.

7 Pēc iepriekšsastādītā: 'according to the previously compiled'.

13 Brauciens ar riteni

A bicycle trip

141

BAIBA: Tātad šeit Rīgā, kur mums ir daudz laika un iespēju, var rūpēties par savu veselību. Un atcerieties: ar divrīteni braukdams, jāievēro visi satiksmes noteikumi.

Vocabulary

ritenis (divritenis, bicycle velosipēds)	bērnība	childhood
Jūrmala	Majori	resort near Jūrmala
beach resort	tēis	dad, daddy
west of Riga (literally 'seaside')	piesārnot	pollute
aunt (less formally: tante)	taisns	straight
allow, let (pres. atlauj, past atlāva)	līdzens	flat, level
there, thither	uzmanīgs	careful, attentive
atlaud	rūpēties (par)	take care (of), look (after)
turp	ievērot	observe
	noteikums	rule, regulation

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- comparison of adverbs
- verb participles
- Latvian road signs

Dialogue 1

By bicycle to the beach

One sunny day Jānis and Baiba decide to take the children for a bicycle trip out of Riga on bicycles they have borrowed from Gunārs and Aija for the day.

JĀNIS: Baiba! Bēni! Brauksim uz Jūrmalu ar riteniem, ko tēvojis un krustmāte ir mums atlāvuši nemt, kamēr vīni ir darbā!

BAIBA: Bet, Jāni, vai mēs vienā dienā paspēsim aizbraukt turp un atpakaļ?

JĀNIS: Protams! Atceros, ka savā bērnībā es bieži braucu no plilsētas uz Majoriem.

IMANTS: Jā, bet tēti, tavā bērnībā satiksme vēl nebija tik bieza, kā tagad!

BAIBA: Un gaiss tagad ir daudz vairāk piesārnots. Bet paskaites uz karti! Jūrmala nemaz nav tik tālu, un cels uz turieni ir taisns un, cik es atceros, līdzens.

DZIDRA: Labi! Brauksim, un redzēsim, cik tālu mēs paspēsim! Bet brauksim lēnām un uzmanīgi! Jūs, bērni, katru dienu braucat uz skolu ar velosipēdu, bet diemzīl manā darba vieta atrodas pāri tālu, lai varētu braukt ar divrīteni.

Language points

Gender in past participles

Jānis mentioned to the children that the bicycles (*divritenis*, pl. *divritēji*, or *velosipēdi* as he called them), were lent to them by their uncle and aunt:

ko tēvojis un krustmāte mums ir atlāvuši.

Where the subject of the verbal participle is plural but of different genders, the *masculine plural* ending is used (*atlāvuši*).

The present active participle -dams

We already know the form of the present active participle of the verb (-ošs) which can be used adjectively. A different participle, however, is needed when the subject of a verb in a main clause is also the subject of a subordinate clause. Consider this example in English:

Walking in the street, I spotted a familiar face.

The sentence consists of two clauses (two verb phrases), but the subject of both verbs is the same: 'I'. In such a case we use the special form ending in **-dams** in Latvian:

Iedams pa ielu, es ieraudžiju pazīstamu seju.

This participle is variable according to gender and number, but not according to case: it can only ever occur as a nominative, by reason of its function.

Pie galda sēdējami/sēdēdama, mēs sākām ēst.
Sitting (m./f.) at the table, we began to eat.

Dialogue 2

The environment

As in many other countries, the Kalējs family has noticed a big difference in the quality of the air and the environment generally in the capital city and the rural areas they have seen. Jānis and Baiba take up the subject with Gunārs and Aija after their bicycle trip

BAIBA: Kad mēs braucām šodien ar riteņiem, mums šķita, ka Rīgas gaiss ir diezgan netirs. Vai tas ir tā piesārņots pēdējā laikā?

GUNĀRS: Nu, padomju laikā mūsu vide bija vēl netirāka. Sevišķi lielās rūpniecības izlaida bīstamas, neapstrādātas vielas tieši gaisā. Tagad vairak rūpējas, lai izvairītos no šādām briesmām, un piesārnojums tiek kontrolēts un samazināts. Bet tomēr pilsētas celu satiksme ir strauji pieauga, un tādēļ mums ir jaunas vides problēmas. Diemžēl tikai nesen latvieši sākā apzināties vides aizsardzības neatliekamību.

AJA: Bet par laimi! Latvijā lieklākoties ir vieglā rūpniecība – protams izņemot Rīgu. Un laukos vide ir samērā tira.

BAIBA: Jā, bet citur Latvijā ir citas vides problēmas. Piemēram upēs ir ieplūdinātas neapstrādātas rūpnieciskās vielas – apdraudēta vairāk, nekā citas Eiropas zemēs, varbūt pat dažādos veidos.

GUNĀRS: Man šķiet, ka vispār Latvijas vide tagad vairs nav mazāk. Un vides aizsardzība jāveic mūsdienu pasaulei tik

AUA: Aizsardzība no kā?

GUNĀRS: No masveida tūrisma sekām, no rūpniecības izaugsmes, no jaunu ceļu būvēšanas un vēl daudziem citiem draudiem.

Vocabulary

aizsardzība	protection
neatliekamība	urgency (atlikt 'postpone')
izņemot	excepting (izņemt 'take out')
(pres. izlaiž, past izlaidā)	flow in
apstrādāt	industrial
bīstams	endanger
viena	modern, 'of our day'
izvairīties	mass
briesmas (pl.)	tourism
kontrolēt	consequence,
samazināt	result
pieaugt (intr.)	growth,
problēma	development
apzināties	threat, menace

Language points

Comparison of adverbs

Gunārs remarked that it seemed to him that:

vispār Latvijas vide tagad vairs nav apdraudēta vairāk, kā citās Eiropas zemēs, varbūt pat **mazāk**.

in general the environment in Latvia is now no more threatened than in other European countries, maybe even less.

In the comparative and superlative degrees, adverbs take no ending other than the comparative suffix **-āk**, which we already know. Thus we get:

vairāk apdraudēta more threatened
visvairāk apdraudēta most threatened

- mazāk attīstīts** less developed
vismazāk attīstīts least developed
 and so on. (Note that 'than' is **nekā** in a positive statement but **kā** in a negative one.)

Exercise 1

- Give the past active participles of the following verbs in four forms: masculine and feminine, singular and plural: **nakt; kliegt; braukt; skafit; pirk; izmānot**.
- Give the present active participles of the same verbs in the same four forms.

Exercise 2

Insert the appropriate forms of the verbs given in parentheses in this paraphrase of the dialogue you have just read.

Baiba (past tense of **teikti**), ka braucienā vieniem (**skriet**), ka Rīgas gaiss (**būt**) netirs. Viņa (**jautāt**), vai tas pēdējos gados tiek (**piesārquot**). Gunārs (**paskaidrot**), ka kaut gan pašlaik rūpnīcas (**neizīmēt**) tik daudz (**neapstrādāt**) vielu kā padomju laikos, tomēr ceļa satiksme Latvijas galvas pilsētā strauji (**pieauga**), un tādēj tagad (**jā + cīnīties**) ar jaunām vides problēmām. Aija (**piebilst**), ka tikai nesen latvieši ir (**sākt apzināties**) par vides aizsardzības neatliekamību. Un ir vēl daudz, par ko (**jā + rūpēties**). Upēs vēl šodien (**tikt ieplūdinātas**) rūpnīcības vietas, un vide (**jā + aizsargat**) pret daudziem briesmu draudiem. Tomēr Gunārs (**ticēt**), ka Latvijas vidi šādas briesmas (**neapdraudēt**) vairāk, kā citur Eiropā.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latvian:

- Road traffic in the capital city is growing ever more rapidly.
- Industrial substances are being released into the river.
- Latvia is only a small country, and that is why it must be protected.
- The children were unable to get all the way from here to Dubulti by bicycle.
- In Soviet times people were unaware of the importance of environmental protection.

- 6 Nowadays people take more care of their health.
 7 Travelling by bicycle, they crossed the Daugava by the Vanšu bridge.
 8 Looking to the right, I saw two cars coming towards me. (Note word order here!)

Exercise 4

What do these Latvian proverbs mean? Look up the Glossary for additional vocabulary.

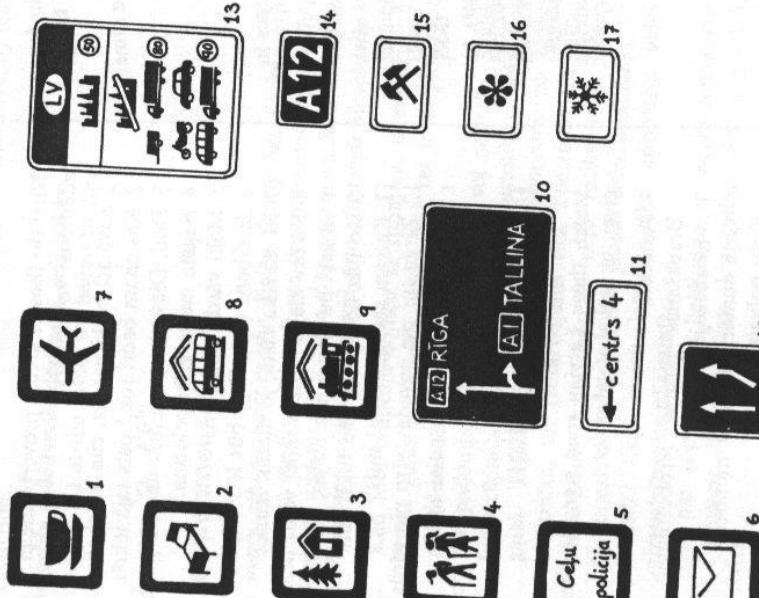
- Savā acī balki nerēdz, cita acī skābargu redz.
- Kas citam bedri rok,¹ pats tajā iekrit.
- Dod, Dievini, otram dot, ne no otra mīji lūgt.
- Bagāta maize grūti pelnāma.
- Māki vārdū, zini celu.
- Ja dibens niez, Rīgā būs lēts sviests.
- Jo resnāka cūka, jo mazāk laimes.
- Kā tev klājas? Dievs milē, velns neatstājas.
- Ja zāki pā ziemu nāk mājas, tad bagāta vasara gaidāma.
- Ko līdz lieli gurķi, kad tukši vidi.
- Katram savs graustīš milš!
- Zirgu tur pie pavadus, viru pie vārda.

Language in action

Match these Latvian road signs to their descriptions, which are given in alphabetical order.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---|---|--|
| Autoosta | Braukšanas ātrums | ierobežojumi | Latvijā (ātrums 'speed';
ierobežojums 'limit') |
| Celā numurs | (numurs 'number') | Celu polīcija | Darbadienās |
| Dzelzceļa stacija | Gājēju maršruta sākums (gājējs 'walker, hiker') | Iepriekšējā virzienā rādiņās (advance direction indicator; virziens 'direction') | Jauniņu tūristu mītnē ('youth hostel'; jaunietis 'youth, young person'; mītnē 'hostel, accommodation') |

Joslās sākums (josla 'belt, zone'; here 'lane')
 Kafejnīca
 Lidosta
 Pasts (post office)
 Sestdienās, svētdienās un svētku dienās
 Viesnīca vai motelis
 Virzienu rādītājs
 Ziemā



Note: LV is the international code for vehicles from Latvia. It is also the prefix in Latvian postcodes.

14 Pusdienas

A dinner

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- Latvian food and cooking
- the prefix **pa-**
- adjectives in relation to nouns

Dialogue 1

Preparing dinner

One evening, Aija decides to cook a meal of Latvian delicacies, as Ivars and Dace are visiting from the country again

AJA: Šodien es jums pagatavošu dažus ēdienu, kas iepri patik

Ivaram un Dacei, jo viņi atbrauks pie mums cīemos.

BAIBA: Un droši vien atvedis svaigus dārzeņus.

AJA: Mums sevišķi garšo kartupeļu pankūkas.

BAIBA: Arī pie mums es bieži gatavoju tradicionālus latviešu ēdienu.

GUNĀRS: Man vislabāk garšo kartupeļu sacepums ar krējumu un ikriem.

AJA: Labi! No svaigajiem kartupeļiem es gatavošu abus ēdienus.

BAIBA: Manas pankūkas bieži vien iznāk pacietas. Nezinu kāpēc.

AJA: Nu, es tev parādīšu, kā es tās gatavoju. Saīvētiem kartupeļiem nospiež mazliet sulas, bet masai pievieno olu un karoti kējuma, un tad cepums nebūs pārāk ciets, bet būs gana mīksts. Bet nu, gatavosim ēdienus kopā.

DZIDRA: Mmm, smažo brīnišķīgi!

AJA: Jā, mēs vienmēr baudām tos svaigos dārzeņus, ko atnes

- Dace un Ivars. Bet katra nedēļu es ēju arī uz Rīgas Centrāltirgu, lai pirktu tos ēdienu, kas mums patik un kas nav pārāk dārgi, piemēram zivis un sieru un varbiņi arī speki.
- BAIBA: Bet jūs laikam ejat arī sēnot un ogot!
- GUŅĀRS: Protams! Augustā un septembrī mēs ejam katru nedēļu, sestdien vai svētdien, uz meži ar groziem un lasām sēnes vai ogas līdz pat vakaram.
- Vai līdz tam brīdīm, kad vairs nav vietu grozos.
- Redzu šeit virtuvē, ka tu pati vāri ievārījumus.
- JĀNIS: Jā, jo pašaistītā vienmēri garšo vislabāk. Un dažreiz, kad man ir laiks, es cepu arī kūkas, maizi un maizītes.
- BAIBA:

'ish' when added to English adjectives. Thus while *ciets* means 'hard', *paciets* is only 'a bit hard, hardish'. Likewise: *pavēls* 'latish, rather late', *pāgārs* 'longish', *pabargs* 'rather severe', *pakuris* 'hard of hearing' (from *kurls* 'deaf') and many others.

The effect is much the same when the same prefix is added to verbs. This gives the verb a sense of momentariness. In the dialogue Aija used the expression *es tev parādīsu* 'I'll show you' (from *rādīt* 'show'). Likewise *pagaidīt* 'wait a moment'; *pastāstīt* 'tell (briefly)'; *pasmaidīt* 'smile (a bit)'. But do not assume that *pa-* always has this effect; sometimes it creates an entirely different meaning to the basic verb: for example *sūtīt* means 'send', but *pasiūtīt* means 'order (to be sent)'; *stāvēt* means 'stand', but *pastāvēt* 'exist' (also 'stand for a while'); *tikt* 'get, become' (formerly 'like'), but *patikt* 'please'.

Vocabulary

svaigs	fresh	masa	mass, paste
dārzeni	vegetables	gana = diezgan	
pankūka	pancake	mīksts	soft
tradicionalās	traditional	smaržot	smell
sacepums	baked food	(pleasantly), be fragrant	
	(kartupeļu	īknedēl	every week
	sacepums	Centrālringus	Central Market
	'shepherd's pie'	zīvs (f.)	fish (declined like <i>gavs</i>)
krējums	cream (usually sour cream)	spēķis	bacon
	roe, caviar	sēnot	pick mushrooms
likri	hardish (<i>ciefs</i>)	ogot	pick berries
paciets	'hard'	lasīt	pick
sarīvēt	grate		
nospiest	crush, press (out)		

Language points

The adjectival prefix *pa-*

Manas pankūkas bieži vien iznāk pacietas.
My pancakes quite often turn out hardish.

The prefix *pa-*, when added to adjectives, tends to lessen the intensity of the meaning. It thus has much the same effect as the suffix

Recipes

These are the two recipes they make. When you have understood them, you might like to try making them yourself.

Kartupēļu sacepums ar krējumu un ikriem

Lielu kartupeli nomizo un sarīvē uz rupjas rives vai arī sagriež loti plānās sloksnītēs. Pieliek mazliet sāls un piparu. Gatavo masu liet uz pannas sakarsētā eļļā, izlīdzina un cep no abām pusēm brūnu. Gatovo sacepumu liek uz šķīvia, pārlej' ar krējumu un uzber karotī melno ikru. Kartupēļu sacepumu var ēst arī ar skābāku ievārījumu, sēnu vai kādu citu mērci:

1 infinitive: *pārlej.*

Marinēta sīķe ar kartupeli

Sīķi nomērcē, notīra, sagriež slīpos gabalinos. Sipolus sagriež gredzenos vai pusgredzenos un applaučē verdošā ūdeni. Visu liet etika un eļļas maiņumā, kam pievienotas lauru lapas, cukurs un pipari, un marinē sīķi vismaz divas stundas.

Sīķi pasniedz kopā ar folijā ceptu kartupeli. Paprāvu nomizotu cepeškrāsnī, kamēr gatavs. Izcepto kartupeli vidi iešķel uz pusēm! Cep pilda ar skābu krējumu un uzkaisa dilles. Pasniedz kopā ar sīķi kā karsto uzokodu.

1 infinitive: *aižīt.*

Language points

More about agreement of nouns and adjectives

Returning to the discussion of noun and adjective agreement on page 149 above, you may have noticed a couple of interesting examples in the recipes given above. In the first recipe, look again at the sentence:

Gatavo masu liet uz pannas sakarsētā eļļā, izlīdzina un cep no abām pusēm brūnu.
Put the prepared mixture into a pan in heated oil, smooth out and fry on both sides (until) brown.

In Latvian we say literally 'fry on both sides brown', and the word 'brown' (**brūnu**) is accusative, as it refers to the mixture (**masu**, acc.) which is the object of the verb **cept** 'fry'.
Further, look at the last sentence in the second recipe:

Pasniedz kopā ar sīķi kā karsto uzokudu.
Serve together with the herring as a ('the') hot snack.

Here, **uzokodu** 'snack' is in the accusative because it is the object of **pasniedz** 'serve' ('serve it' is understood, as it would be in an English-language recipe).

Remember that with some verbs, the adverbial form of the adjective is appropriate – especially verbs describing states of feeling or existence:

1 **Vieniem klājas labi.** They are doing well.
Es jūtos **slikti.** I feel bad.

Viss bija labi. Everything was good. (or: 'It was all good.')

Exercise 1

The vocabulary you need for these two recipes you will find in the Glossary at the back of the book. No list of ingredients was given before each of the recipes: can you write out the lists yourself?

Exercise 2

In both of the recipes the instructions contained quite a lot of verbs, some of them quite irregular. You will find all the clues you need in the vocabulary and verb tables at the back of the book to make a list of all the verbs in the recipes in their infinitive (dictionary) form. Include the verbs that occur here in participial form.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 We have always tried to live comfortably.
- 2 However, only recently has our life become comfortable.
- 3 Everything on the table looks so good.
- 4 Make all the pancakes thin.
- 5 I arrived at their place as an unexpected guest.
- 6 She treated me as an uninvited guest.
- 7 I like my beer cold. (Note: remember what to say for 'I like')
- 8 Wash the herrings clean.

Reading passage

Here is another one of the ancient Latvian dainas. Additional vocabulary can be found in the Glossary.

Rit, rit, Mēnesi,
Vārtinus vērt!
Nu brauca Saulēi
Trejādi viesi:
Brauc tēvs, brauc māte,
Brauc bālelini,
Brauc mazas māsiņas
Kā magnonīles,
Brauc maizi brālīši
Kā ozolini.

15 Brauciens gar krastu

A trip along the coast

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- prepositions and their uses
- the relative mood: reported speech
- letter-writing
- verbs governing the dative case
- 'need' and 'ought' in Latvian

Dialogue 1

By car to the coast

The Kalējs family's stay in Latvia will soon be over, and they don't feel they have seen enough of the country yet. So on their final weekend in Latvia, Gunārs offers to take them on a car trip along parts of the extensive Latvian coast.

GUNĀRS: Rit brauksim ar mašīnu gar Vidzemes jūrmalu. Jūs vēl neesat redzējuši mūsu skaisto jūras krastu. Es domāju, ka parīt, ja būs labs laiks, varēsim aizbraukt arī uz Kurzemes jūrmalu. Kā jūs domājat?

IMANTS: Jā, es labprāt gribētu pacelot ar mašīnu!
BAIBA: Žēl, ka tik daudz paliek vēl neapskātūs! Piemēram, gribētos redzēt Gaujas nacionālo parku.

GUNĀRS: Nu, tas atrodas Sigulda apkārnē. Pa ceļam uz Siguldu mēs varēsim apstāties pie restorāna 'Sēnīte' ap pusi dienu laiku, un no turienes —

DZIDRA: Parādi man uz kartes, lūdzu, kur tā atrodas!

GUNĀRS: Šeit atrodas Sigulda, redzi? Varbūt īemsim savas pusdienu lasījumi. Un no turienes brauksim caur Parku uz Cēsim, tad uz Limbažiem.

- JĀNIS: Un pēc tam pa šoseju 'Via Baltica' līdz Salacgrīvai.
Varbūt paspēsim aizbraukt līdz pat Igaunijas robežai, vai
nē?
- BĀBĀ: Šī vieta vēl nebija parks, kad es biju jauna.
- AUJA: Nē, tiki pirms diļdesmit gadiem tas kļuva par parku.
Tad tika nolemts, ka Gaujas upes apkārtnē ir jāsaudzē,
jo tās daba ir ļoti skaista.
- GŪNĀRS: Siguldā ir veca pils, kas droši vien tev interesēs, Jāni.
Ja, un Turaidu es ļoti gribētu redzēt; tas esot sens lībiešu
ciemats.
- DZIDRA: Kas ir lībieši?
- GŪNĀRS: Lībieši ir ļoti veca somugru tauta, kas esot apdzīvojusi
Latviju jau pirms latviešiem. Viņu pēcteči vēl dzīvojusi
dažos zvejnieku ciemos Kurzemē kratsā, līdz pat mūsu
dienām, bet viņu palicis ir ļoti maz.
- DZIDRA: Bet ko nozīmē 'somugru tauta'? Vai viņi ir somu
radinieki?
- JĀNIS: Jā, somu un arī igaunu valodai.
- GŪNĀRS: Un vai mēs varēsim braukt atpakaļ pa citu ceļu?
- JĀNIS: Ja, protams, piemēram, gar krastu caur Saulkrastiem, kas
ari ir ļoti skaista un interesanta vieta.
- DZIDRA: Tad brauksim agri no rita, tūlīt pēc brokastīm!

Language points

Prepositions

In the dialogue above we met three new prepositions: **caur**, **pirms** and **gar**. We have by now learned virtually all of the Latvian prepositions, so let us list them all here, with an indication of what cases they govern. (Don't forget that in the plural, all prepositions govern the dative case.) Approximate renderings of their meanings are listed here too, but Latvian prepositions do not have exact equivalents in English.

	<i>Preposition</i>	<i>Case governed</i>	<i>Approximate meaning</i>
	aiz	gen.	behind, due to
	ap	acc.	about, around
	apakš	gen.	below, under
	ar	acc.	with, by means of
	ārpus	gen.	outside
	augšpus	gen.	above
	bez	gen.	without
	caur	acc.	through
	gar	acc.	along
	iekšpus	gen.	inside
	kopš	gen.	since
	lejpus	gen.	down from
	līdz	dat.	until, up to
	no	gen.	from, out of
	otrpus	acc.	on the other side of
	pa	acc.	through, along
	par	acc.	for, as
	pār	acc.	across, over
	pēc	gen.	after, according to
	pie	gen.	at (the place of)
	pirms	gen.	since, ago
	pret	acc.	against, towards
	priekš	dat.	before, for
	starp	acc.	between, among
	šaipus	dat.	on this side of
	uz	gen.	on
	vienpus	acc.	to, until
	virs	dat.	opposite
	zem	gen.	above below

Vocabulary

gar (+ acc.)	along	saudzēt	protect
parīt	the day after	daba	nature
pacelot	travel, go on a	lībieši	Livonian
	trip	ciemats	settlement, village
žel	(it's a) pity	somugru	Finn-Ugrian (sons 'Finn')
nacionāls	national	apdzivot	inhabit
apstāties	stop (off)	pēctečis	descendant
šoseja	highway	zvejnieks	fisherman
	before; ago	ciems	village
pirms (+ gen.)	become	vairs	any longer (with ne: 'no longer')
kļūt (+ par before nouns)	before nouns)	igaunis	Estonian
nolemt	decide	līdzgzs	similar, like
apkārtnē	surroundings,	caur (+ acc.)	through
	vicinity		

There are also two *postpositions* (placed after the noun); **dēļ** 'because of' and **labad** 'for the sake of', both taking the genitive.

Gender in subjectless clauses

Tad tika nolemts, ka Gaujas upes apkārtne ir jāsaudzē.

It was decided that the Gauja river area must be protected.

We have already met subjectless clauses in Latvian: cases where we would use a non-specific 'it' in English. Very often, as in this example, they involve a passive construction. Where the passive participle has no subject to refer to, it appears in the *masculine gender* (*nolemts*).

The relative mood and its tenses

In the dialogue, Gunārs said that:

Lībieši ir ļoti veca somugru tauta, kas esot apdzīvojusi Latviju jaū pirms latviešiem.

'The Livonians are a very ancient Finno-Ugrian people, who are supposed to have inhabited Latvia even before the Latvians.'

Later, he said:

-Vīnu valoda esot ļoti līdzīga īgaunu valodai.

Their language is said to be very similar to Estonian.

The form of the verb used here is called the *relative mood*, because it is used for 'relating' what is only hearsay in the speaker's view; it is 'non-committal', suspending belief. It only has one ending for all persons: '-ot', which is added to the present tense stem:

Vīni ejot uz veikalu.

They are supposed to be going to the shop.

Vīna skrienot ātrāk nekā viņas māsa.

'They say she runs faster than her sister.'

Pils esot ļoti veca.

'The castle is supposed to be very old.'

There is no simple past tense of the relative mood; instead we use a perfect tense with **esot**:

Tu esot pirkusi jaunas drēbes, Māra.

'They say you've bought new clothes, Māra.'

Runā, ka Vilis esot bijis ārzenēs.

'They say that Vilis has been abroad.'

There is a future tense of the relative mood, formed with **šot** added to the future stem:

Pie mums nākšot jauns ārsti.

'A new (or: A young) doctor is said to be going to come to us.'

Pēc saraksta, drīz pienākšot vilciens.

'According to the timetable, a train is supposed to come soon.'

Māte mums aiziedza iet ārā, jo Iššot lietus.

'Mother forbade us to go out, because it will rain (she says).'

A letter home

After a tour of the Kurzeme coast some days later, Baiba writes a letter to a Latvian friend back in Australia

Dargā Birutā!

Mūsu atvaiļinājums šeit Latvijā ir gandžū beižies. Mums ar bēriem tas ir bijis brīnišķīgs piedzīvojums. Tev vajadzētu braukt uz Latviju, kā tu bieži esī apsolījusi, lai ar savām acīm redzētu, cik daudz ūz zeme ir pārmainījusies, kopš tu to pēdējo reizi redzēji.

Šodien mēs visi braucām ar mana svārīgu mašīnu gar Kurzemes krastu. Protams vienā dienā nepaspēj visu krastu redzēt, bet mēs redzējām vismaz visā Rīgas līča krastu, līdz pat Kolkas ragam.

Vai tu atceries Kuldīgu no savas jaunības? Tu to pazītu vēl šodien, jo tā ir vēl tā pati pilsētīņa, ko es atceros. Ventas krastā. Sevišķi tās baznīcas ir loti lespaidīgas. Ja būtu vairāk laika, gribētos veikt braucienu ar laivīnu līdz Ventspili. Bet mēs sekojām krasta ceļam, nevis ventai. Visa krasta garumā ir jauka jūrmala ar smalkām smiltīm. Braucām gar Engures ezeru, uz Roju, kur pieturējām, lai ieestu brīvā dabā. Turpinājām līdz Kolkas ragam, un apakalceļā mēs braucām caur Dundagu, kur apmeklējām veco pili, un Talsiem, Kandavu un Tukumu.

Bet drīz varēšu pati tev pastāstīt par visu redzēto un piedzīvoto, jo nākamnedēļ līdosim apakāj uz Adelaidi. Diemžēl šoreiz mums nebija laika redzēt Ventspili un Liepāju Kurzemes braucienā, bet lai tas paliek uz nākamo reizi!

Vīsu labu jums visiem novēlē

Baiba un Jānis

Vocabulary

beigies	end	sekot (+ dat.)	follow
piedzivojums	adventure	garums	length (garš 'long')
vajadzēt	need	jūrmala	seashore (comp. Jūrmala , Riga seaside resort)
pārmainīties	change, be transformed	smalks	fine
	brother-in-law	smilts (f.)	sand (usually pl., smilts)
svainis	bay, gulf	ezers	lake
licis	horn; antler;	pastāstīt	tell
rags	promontory	nākamnedēl	next week
	recognize	lidot	fly
pazīt	church	novēlēt	wish
baznīca	impressive		
iespaidīggs	boat (dim. laivīpa 'canoe, skiff, paddle-boat')		
laiva			

Language points

Letter-writing

Baiba has written a casual, informal letter to a close friend. Note the way she addresses her: **Dārgā Biruta!** She uses the definite form **dārgā** 'dear' and the vocative case. If the letter were to a man it would begin with **dārgais**.

In a more formal letter we might use the word **cienījam/-ais/-ā**. This approximately means 'respected' or 'esteemed' (cienīt 'respect').

In signing off, Baiba used the phrase: **Visu labu juns visiem** novēlē ..., roughly 'All best wishes to you both from ...'. The farewell phrase in a letter can be varied in many ways. One common, and slightly more formal, expression is **Ar sirsniņiem sveicieniem** 'With sincere greetings' or simply **Ar sveicienu**. Latvians are less likely to use the terms of endearment that English-speaking letter-writers tend to use, unless they really mean them. And if terms of endearment are called for, then a Latvian might address his or her loved one with a diminutive: **Pēteriņ!** or **Baibīņ!**

Prepositions used as conjunctions

A very few of the prepositions in the list above can be used as conjunctions as well. Baiba used one of them in her letter:
cik daudz ūz zeme ir pārmainījusies, kopš tu to pādējo reizi redzēji.

how much this country has changed since you last saw it.

Here the word **kopš** governs a whole clause, just as 'since' does in English.

Pirms 'before' can be used in a similar way:

Pirms vija rakstija vēstuli, Baiba ilgi domāja.

Before she wrote the letter, Baiba thought for a long time.

We cannot use any of the other prepositions to govern whole clauses, except, in some contexts, **līdz** 'until':

Es gaidīju ilgi, līdz vini atgriežās.

I waited a long time until they returned.

(But **līdz** is not used very much in this way; a more common word for 'until', which would be more natural here, is **kamēr** – which also means 'while'.)

Verbs governing the dative case

Some verbs which might seem to an English-speaker to require a direct object, actually govern the dative case. One of them, **sekot** 'follow', occurred in Baiba's letter:

Bet mēs sekojām krasta ceļam, nevis Ventaī.

But we followed the coast road, not the Venta (river).

Another common verb that takes the dative is **palīdzēt** 'help':

Mēs palīdzējām dāmai pāriet ielu.

We helped a lady cross the street.

In addition there are of course verbs taking the dative that behave very differently from the corresponding English structures, such as **man patīk** 'I like', **man garsō** 'I like (the taste of)', which we have already discussed. **Ticēt** 'believe' also takes the dative.

'Need' and 'ought'

A very useful verb that is worth special attention is **vajadzēt** 'need'. This is another verb that governs in the dative what would be the logical subject in English, for example:

Man vajag jaunu gultu. (Note the present tense ending!)
or: **Man vajadzīga jauna gulta.**
I need a new bed.

(Here **man** is dative, while **jauna gulta** is nominative.) But when used in the subjunctive mood, it takes on the meaning of 'ought' in English. This is how Baiba used it in her letter:

Tev vajadzētu braukt uz Latviju, kā tu bieži esi apsolījusi.

You ought to travel to Latvia as you have often promised to.

Participles used as objects

Where in English we might use a phrase such as 'what was said' or 'what I have seen', Latvian expresses the same idea in one word, using the past passive participle in its definite form. This is what Baiba did in her letter:

"Bet drīz varēšu pati tev pastāstīt par visu redzēto un piedzīvojo.
But soon I'll be able to tell you myself about everything I've seen and experienced.

Here the participle is 'standing in for' a whole phrase, just as a pronoun stands in for a noun. A further example:

Neizteikta bija vairāk nekā izteikta.

What was (left) unexpressed was more than what was expressed.

We can do the same with present passive participles too, to make them stand for abstract ideas: **neizteicamais** 'the inexpressible', and so on.

Points to include in your letter.

Tell her how much you enjoyed her recent visit to your country.
Ask if you may take up her suggestion of visiting her.
Ask her when it would be suitable for you to come.
Tell her that your Latvian has much improved since you last met, but a visit to Riga would improve it even more.
Say you are looking forward to meeting her family and friends.
Ask her if she would like you to bring anything from your country.
Sign off in a friendly way.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian, using the relative mood:

- 1 They say he has suddenly become rich.
- 2 I heard that she will never return to our village.
- 3 You are supposed to have never written a letter in your life.
- 4 They told me the doctor will be here in an hour.
- 5 It is supposed to be the oldest settlement in Latvia.
- 6 The Lithuanians are supposed to be poorer than the Latvians, but I don't believe that.
- 7 Norway is said to be the most expensive country in Europe.
- 8 You were going to buy them a present.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 You really ought to help your mother.
- 2 When I return, I'll tell you everything I've heard.
- 3 We followed the river as far as the sea.
- 4 Latvia has several beautiful lakes which you ought to see.
- 5 Before I came here, the shop was almost empty.
- 6 Since we arrived in Latvia we have not had a single free day.
- 7 We walked through Valka as far as the Estonian border.
- 8 They say she has got married, but you ought to ask her.

Language in action

Imagine you are writing to a friend in Latvia whom you know reasonably well. Her name is Laima Kārkliņa, and let's say her address is Juglas iela 65 – 23 (= flat 23), Riga. You would address the envelope in the same order as you would in any western country:

Reading passage

Here is a passage from a book about the *Latvijas Etnogrāfiskais Brivdabas Muzejs* (the Latvian Ethnographic Open-air Museum),

Vocabulary

158

beigties	end	sekot (+ dat.)	follow
piedzīvojums	adventure	garums	length ('garš' 'long')
vajadzēt	need	jūrmala	seashore (comp. Jūrmala, Riga seaside resort)
pārmainīties	change, be transformed	smalks	fine
svainis	brother-in-law	smilts (f.)	sand (usually pl., smilītis)
īris	bay, gulf	ezers	lake
rags	horn; antler; promontory	pastāstīt	tell
pazit	recognize	nākamnedēļ	next week
baznīca	church	lidot	fly
iespaidīgs	impressive	novēlēt	wish
laiņa	boat (dim. laivīga 'canoe, skiff, paddle-boat')		

Language points

Letter-writing

Baiba has written a casual, informal letter to a close friend. Note the way she addresses her: Dārgā Biruta! She uses the definite form would begin with **dārgās**. In a more formal letter we might use the word **cienījam/-ais/-ā** (cienīt novēlē ...), roughly 'All best wishes to you both from ...'. The 'respect'.

In signing off, Baiba used the phrase: **Visu labu jums visiem** farewell phrase in a letter can be varied in many ways. One common, and slightly more formal, expression is **Ar sirsniģiem sveicieniem** 'With sincere greetings', or simply **Ar sveicienu**. Latvians are less likely to use the terms of endearment that English-speaking letter-writers tend to use, unless they really mean them. And if terms of endearment are called for, then a Latvian might address his or her loved one with a diminutive: **Pēterīti!** or **Baibīn!**

Prepositions used as conjunctions

A very few of the prepositions in the list above can be used as conjunctions as well. Baiba used one of them in her letter:

cik daudz šī zeme ir pārmainījusies, kopš tu to pēdējo reizi redzēji.

how much this country has changed since you last saw it.

Here the word **kopš** governs a whole clause, just as 'since' does in English.

Pirms 'before' can be used in a similar way:

Pirms vina rāksfija vēstuli, Baiba ilgi domāja.

Before she wrote the letter, Baiba thought for a long time.

We cannot use any of the other prepositions to govern whole clauses, except, in some contexts, **līdz** 'until':

Es gaidīju ilgi, līdz viņi atgriezās.

I waited a long time until they returned.

(But **līdz** is not used very much in this way; a more common word for 'until', which would be more natural here, is **kamēr** – which also means 'while'.)

Verbs governing the dative case

Some verbs which might seem to an English-speaker to require a direct object, actually govern the dative case. One of them, **sekot** 'follow', occurred in Baiba's letter:

Bet mēs sekojām krasīta ceļam, nevis Ventaī.

But we followed the coast road, not the Venta (river).

Another common verb that takes the dative is **palīdzēt** 'help':

Mēs palīdzējām dāmai pāriet ielu.
We helped a lady cross the street.

In addition there are of course verbs taking the dative that behave very differently from the corresponding English structures, such as **man pafik** 'I like', **man garšo** 'I like (the taste of)', which we have already discussed. **Ticēt** 'believe' also takes the dative.

'Need' and 'ought'

A very useful verb that is worth special attention is **vajadzēt** 'need'. This is another verb that governs in the dative what would be the logical subject in English, for example:

Man vajag jaunu gultu. (Note the present tense ending!)
or: **Man vajadzīga jauna gulta.**
I need a new bed.

(Here **man** is dative, while **jauna gulta** is nominative.) But when used in the subjunctive mood, it takes on the meaning of 'ought' in English. This is how Baiba used it in her letter:

Tev vajadzētu brauktu uz Latviju, kā tu bieži esi apsolījusi.
You ought to travel to Latvia as you have often promised to.

Participles used as objects

Where in English we might use a phrase such as 'what was said' or 'what I have seen', Latvian expresses the same idea in one word, using the past passive participle in its definite form. This is what Baiba did in her letter:

„Bet drīz varēšu pati tev pastāstīt par visu redzēto un piedzīvotu.
But soon I'll be able to tell you myself about everything I've seen and experienced.

Here the participle is 'standing in for' a whole phrase, just as a pronoun stands in for a noun. A further example:

Neizteiktā bija vairāk nekā izteikta.

*What was (*left*) unexpressed was more than what was expressed.*
We can do the same with present passive participles too, to make them stand for abstract ideas: **neizteicamais** 'the inexpressible', and so on.

Language in action

Imagine you are writing to a friend in Latvia whom you know reasonably well. Her name is Laima Kārklinā, and let's say her address is Juglas iela 65 – 23 (= flat 23), Riga. You would address the envelope in the same order as you would in any western country.

Points to include in your letter.

Tell her how much you enjoyed her recent visit to your country.
Ask if you may take up her suggestion of visiting her.
Ask her when it would be suitable for you to come.
Tell her that your Latvian has much improved since you last met, but a visit to Riga would improve it even more.
Say you are looking forward to meeting her family and friends.
Ask her if she would like you to bring anything from your country.
Sign off in a friendly way.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian, using the relative mood:

- 1 They say he has suddenly become rich.
- 2 I heard that she will never return to our village.
- 3 You are supposed to have never written a letter in your life.
- 4 They told me the doctor will be here in an hour.
- 5 It is supposed to be the oldest settlement in Latvia.
- 6 The Lithuanians are supposed to be poorer than the Latvians, but I don't believe that.
- 7 Norway is said to be the most expensive country in Europe.
- 8 You were going to buy them a present.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 You really ought to help your mother.
- 2 When I return, I'll tell you everything I've heard.
- 3 We followed the river as far as the sea.
- 4 Latvia has several beautiful lakes which you ought to see.
- 5 Before I came here, the shop was almost empty.
- 6 Since we arrived in Latvia we have not had a single free day.
- 7 We walked through Valka as far as the Estonian border.
- 8 They say she has got married, but you ought to ask her.

Reading passage

Here is a passage from a book about the Latvian Ethnographic Museum, Brīvdabas Muzejs (the Latvian Ethnographic Open-air Museum),

which the Kalejs family visited in an earlier lesson. It describes the interiors of some traditional Latvian houses. Vocabulary will be found in the Glossary.

16 Mūzika un kultūra

Music and culture

Senākajā baltu majoklī bija viena telpa un pavards tās vidū. Šāds iekārtojums saglabājies vairs tikai 'vārāmajiem' naminjiem un vietumi arī pirtim. Pavardu jau vismaz tukstoš gadus aizvietojuši akmens krāvuma krāsns. Parasti to ierikoja istabas kaktā, lai labi vai kreisi no iejas blīetēja vai mūrēja krāsns – cepli, kurš bija bez dūmavada, novjetots uz 2. vai 3. gulbalku cīrtņa – pacepla. Šādi griešiem – sinceš, bet savienojot ar sincēm divus cīrtņus, izveidojās trišdalīga dzīvojamā māja; krāsns varēja būti abos tās 'galos' vai arī vai arī to apdzīvoja tikai vasarās. Ar laiku latgaliešu krāsns zaudēja plīti; pazauda arī grozāmais kāsis, uz kura pakāra ēdiena kadlu. Dažviet arī sincēs sadalīja ar sienu ēkas garenvirzenā – radās priekšnams (nams) un pieleikamais vai atsevišķa virtuve ar lielās istabas krāsns kurtuvi un plīti.

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- Latvian music and drama
- 'inclusive' pronouns

Dialogue 1 □

Arriving at the Song Festival

One of the biggest events of the Latvian summer, in the years when it is held, is the Song Festival – Dziesmu Svētki. The Kalejs family and their hosts are able to attend it. They find themselves part of a huge crowd.

BAIBA: Par laimi esam atnesuši savas tautas tērpus līdz. Loti cerēju apmeklēt šos svētkus!

JĀNIS: Šo tēru es Valkāju iepriekšējo reizi, kad dziedāju kopā ar mūsu kori pie mums Adelaidē.

DZIDRA: Ja, un redzi, tēti, šodien šeit dzied arī kāds koris no Adelaides. Varrbūt redzēsim kādu pazīstamu seju.

IMANTS: Šeit ir milzīgi pūli, vēl vairāk cilvēku, nekā es varēju iedomāties.

GUNĀRS: Ir vienreizēja iespēja redzēt un klausīties muzikantus no visas Latvijas.

BAIBA: Kori ir braukusi uz šiem svētkiem ne tikai no Latvijas, bet arī no ārvalstīm.

JĀNIS: Gunār, vai jūs ar Aiju vienmēr piedalaties šajos svētkos?

GUNĀRS: Jā, katru reizi mēs esam piedalījušies. Tas ir unikāls notikums, kas apvieno visu tautu, ne tikai dzimtenē dzīvojošos latviešus, bet arī trimdiniekus.

BAIBA:

Un arī mani vecāki piedalījās tajos. Atceros, ka biju vēl mazāka nekā tu, Dzidra, kad mana vecāmāte pirmo reizi pavadīja mūs ar savu māsu uz svētkiem!

JĀNIS: Mans tēvs stāstija, ka viņa vecītēs esot bijis kāt jau pirmajos svētkos, kas notika 1873. gadā!

Vocabulary

svētki	festival	piedalīties	participate, take part
par laimi	fortunately	unikāts = vienreizējs	unique
valkāt	wear	notikums	event
iepriekšējs	previous, last	apvienot	unite
koris	choir	dzimtene	native country, motherland
mīlīggs	huge, enormous	trīndinieks	exile, national living abroad
pūlis	crowd	vecāmāte	grandmother
iedomāties	imagine	pavadīt	accompany
vienreizējs	unique	večtēvs	grandfather
klausīties	listen to		
muzikants	musician		
ārvalīs	foreign country		

Language in action

If you have the accompanying sound recording, listen to a song by the popular Latvian singer Ieva Akurātere, which is reproduced here. See if you can follow and understand it. Any additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary.

Manai tauvai

Manas domas tās naktis skrien visādus celus,
Uz priekšu, uz sāniem, nereti rinkos,
Manas saknes es jūtu, tās neaug kā nākas,
Pat augļīgā zemē tās liecas¹ un nīrst.¹
Mana tauta, tā nīkst visas pasaules malās,
Bez zemes savas tā cīnās¹ un dalās¹,
Mana tauta, tā nīkst visas pasaules malās,
Pat savā zemē tā neaug kā nākas.

(Chorus) Palidzi, Dievs, palidzi, Dievs, visai latviešu tautai,
Saved¹ to mājās pie Daugavas krastiem,
Saved to mājās.
Palidzi, Dievs, palidzi, Dievs, mūsu latviešu tautai,
Dzit saknes drīz brīvas Latvijas zemē,
Dzit saknes drīz brīvas Latvijas zemē.

Katru dienu tā sāp visai latviešu tautai,
Dalītai, šķirai, tik skurnji skan dziesma.
Katrui dienu tā sāp visai latviešu tautai,
Dalītai, šķirai, dziest¹ lēnām mums liesma.
(Chorus)

1 Infinitive forms of these verbs are: liekties, nikt, ciņīties, daļīties, savest, dzist.

Dialogue 2

At the theatre

In Latvian the plural pronouns **mēs**, **jūs** and **vīji** can be used to include single individuals mentioned separately in the same phrase. Thus **mūs ar savu māsu** does not refer to 'my sister with us', but 'us including my sister', that is 'my sister and me'. The important clue here is the preposition **ar**; it has an inclusive, not an exclusive meaning.

Later in the week, the family goes to the theatre in Riga. There is a performance of a well-known Latvian play, *Pūt, vējini* ('Blow, Wind' – which is also the name of a much-loved Latvian folk-song), by Jānis Rainis (1865–1929), Latvia's best-known writer. Here is an excerpt from it, with stage directions

(Ienāk Gatinš, jauneklis gadu astonpadsmit, neveikls, klībs, savārgušu seju, maza auguma, runā baltīgi.)

GATINŠ (*pavēris durvis*): Man māte lika, lai es saucu jūs azaidā, durvis. Tā.
 CIEPA: Ko tu tik lepns! – Ienāc jel godīgi iekšā maltuvē. Aizaisi
(Gatinš ienāk uz aiztaisa durvis.)
 ORTA: Pasak' laburitu, dēls! dod dievpaligu!
 Kas dievpalidz nesacīja,
 Tas nes velnu mugurā.

GATINŠ: Labu rītu! Dievs palidz!

ANDA: Dievs palidz tev ar! Mēs jau tev arī palidzam: būs arī
 taviem zirgiem mīlu uzmētīņš.

(Meitas smejas, Gatinš noķauņās un ier uz durvīm.)

CIEPA: Pagaid' jel! Pasaki jel vismaz, ko tad tev lika mums teikt.

GATINŠ (*apstājas*): Azaidā lai nākot.

ANDA: Parunājies taču arī druskū ar mums, sieviešēm; esam taču
 jaunas, gītītas meitas, neapsmādē mūs. Mums garš laiks,

tu tik žēlīgi pūt. Mums vēl jānobeидz malums.

(Taisīs ier.)

ORTA: Nu, ko tu! Zini taču, viņš nav runātājs. Bet pastabulē, dēls;

GATINŠ (ar roku rādīdams): Tur dzied; nāk.

CIEPA: Kur? – Nedzirdu.
 GATINŠ: Patīk.
 ZANE: Kuļa tad tev patik? Vai es?

ZANE: Visas! Vai tad Ciepa tāpat kā es?

GATINŠ: Tu vairāk.

CIEPA: Ko, tad es tev nepatiku? Vai es tev par vecu līgavīnā?

ANDA: Bet es jauna. Vai tad es arī nepatiku?

GATINŠ: Tu mani smēj.

ANDA: Vai tad labāk raudāt par tevi?

ZANE: Ko gribat no zēna? Viņam jau ir savā līgavīnā. Kā lai mēs
 viņam patikam?

ANDA (*stājas ceļā, apķerdamā*): Nelaidsu; saki! Vai Barba tava
 līgavīna? Kas tev te piedurknē?

(Gatinš izkrīt maza mīlu lāpstina. Anda to pacel.)

Kāda glīta lāpstina! Tik gludi, rūpīgi nodrāžta; tad ta' laba
 mīlus raust! – Kam tā būs? – Dod man!

GATINŠ (*līm khsu*): Nevar.

ANDA: Dod man; nesmiešos!

GATINŠ (*tāpat*): Tā Bārbalai – viņai daudz jāmai.

(Nosviež lāpstīnu pie Barbinas un aizbēg.)

Vocabulary

jauneklis	youth	pūst	blow (pres. 2nd pers. plnt)
neveikls	awkward, clumsy	nobeigt	finish
klibis	lame	malums	grinding, milling (malt) grind, mill)
savārgt	get sickly		no, not one just as, as well (as)
augums	statue, height	neviens	dim. of ligava: bride
bailīgs	timid	tāpat (kā)	laugh at (pres. above)
pavērt	open slightly	ligavīņa	smej; see smieties
	(pa- + vērt)		cry, weep
azāds	meal	raudāt	boy
jel	(intensifier meaning roughly 'just', 'do!')	zēns	grasp, clasp
	honest	apķert	let (pass) (pres. laiz; future laids)
godīgs	flour-mill	laist	sleeve
maltuve	close, shut		fall out
aiztaisīt	say		ladle, spatula, scoop
pasacīt	(greeting) lit.: God help		pick up
dīvē palidz			smooth
mīli	flour	piedurknē	careful, thorough
uzmetīoš	helping, handful	izkrist	whittle
smieties	laugh (pres. smējas)	lāpstīna	rather, fairly
nokaunēties	feel ashamed	pacelt	fling, throw (pres. nosviež)
parunāties	talk for a while	gluds	run away
sieviete	woman	rūpīgs	
apsnaidēt	disdain, scorn	nodrāzt	
pastabulēt	pipe a little (stabule: traditional Latvian pipe)	itīm	
		nosvīst	
		airbēgt	

Language points

Note: this play is mostly in verse, and has many poetic turns of phrase. The following language points are to help you understand it.

Approximate numbers

The stage direction which opened this passage described Gatis as a *jauneklis gadu astoņpadsmit* 'a youth of about eighteen'. The number is placed *after* the noun *gads* 'year' if we want to make it more approximate.

Phrases with *ko* and other expressions

Ko tu tik lepns! says Ciepa in the play. This might be translated as 'What are you being so proud about?' It is quite common to use exclamations like this beginning with *ko* (= *par ko?*). The expression *Dilevs palidz!*, literally 'God help', is rather old-fashioned nowadays. It is akin to the German *Grüß Gott* and is a relic of the days when social life and manners were led by the Baltic German nobility. The particle *jel* is an emphatic particle, roughly corresponding to English 'do!' in phrases like 'Do come in!'

The letter *f*

This letter represents a palatalized *r*, though the difference is barely audible. The letter was abolished early in the Soviet era, and has not been re-instated in the language. It is found in Latvian books and publications of the first independence period – and therefore Rainis used it – and it has survived in books and publications issued abroad. Some Latvians still use it in writing (as indeed they also use *ch* instead of *h* in words like *(chronika* 'chronicle'). The letter *kura* (*Kura tad tev patīk?*) It was not a common letter, and was never used at the beginning of words; another common word which used to include it is *karš* (now spelled *kars*) 'war'.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Jānis Rainis was one of the most important Latvian writers.
- 2 'Blow, Winds' was written for a Latvian theatre in St Petersburg (*Pēterpils*).
- 3 The play's first performance took place in 1913 (in words!).

- 4 The first performance in Latvia was at the New Theatre in Riga the following year.
- 5 'Fire and Night' was the name of a play which expressed the exile Rainis' longing for (pēc) his homeland.
- 6 In (A) time it became Rainis' most popular and most often performed play.
- 7 The action of the first scene of the play takes place (norit) in a flour-mill.
- 8 The play is a love-story told in verse.

17 Latvijas masu informācijas līdzekļi

The Latvian mass media

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- the Latvian media
- phrases with **tā** and **kā**
- impersonal verbs

Dialogue 1

A newspaper interview

A newspaper journalist asks Jānis for an interview about his experiences as a Latvian from abroad. This is the result.

ŽURNĀLISTE:

JĀNIS:

JĀNIS: Jā, arī viņa ir dzinusi šeit, Vidzeme. Viņas ģimene iepazinās ar manu ģimeni jau drīz pēc pārceļšanas uz Austrāliju.

ŽURNĀLISTE: Kur meklējamas jūsu ģimenes saknes? Pastāstiet par saviem vecākiem.

Cik es zinu, esmu cēlies no Kurzemes no mātes puses, bet cilts koka saknes tēva pusē atrodas kādā pagastā Rietumlatgalē. Mans tēvs nesen mira, bet māte dzīvo vēl Austrālijā.

JĀNIS: Jums ir ģimene, ir bērni?

ŽURNĀLISTE: Man ir divi bērni, zēns un meitene. Gribētos, lai abi bērni prastu latviski un iepazistos ar savu vecāku dzimteni.

ŽURNĀLISTE: Kāpēc jūs nolēmāt apmeklēt Latviju tieši tagad?

JĀNIS: Nu, jau ilgus gadus ir bijis nolūks to apmeklēt, bet Padomju laikā viss šķita mums tik drūns un grūts. Mans tēvs noliēda apmeklēt Latviju, kamēr tā nebija brīva, kaut gan viņš loti ilgojās pēc tās un pēc savas otrās dēļas. Ar savu brāli esmu pats vienmēr sarakstījies, bet diezgan reti. Tikai tad, kad mums pašiem bija bērni, un Latvija vienlaicīgi kļuva par brīvu valsti, nojēmām veikti šo braucienu.

ŽURNĀLISTE: Un kādi ir jūst iespaidi šīdz šīm, kā viesīm no trimdas pēc tik ilgas prombūšanas?

JĀNIS: Nu, esmu vienmēr bijis optimists, un man ir priecīgs

pārsteigums, ka viess iet tik strauji uz priekšu. Mans

brālis tomēr, kas visu mūžu dzīvo šeit, nesaprobt, ka

viņa dzīve virzās uz priekšu - viņam protams šķiet,

ka viess norit pārāk lēni. Ikdienā varbit to neizjūt,

bet valsts noteikti attīstās kopumā uz labākiem

laikiem.

Vocabulary

iepazīšanās	getting acquainted	pārcelties
iegājums	(iepazīties 'get acquainted')	bēgls
īsums	brevity, shortness (īsumā 'in brief')	nometne
gājums	course, progress	uzaugt
piedzīmīt	be born	utt. = un tā tālāk
	studēt	and so on

universitāte	university
studijas	studies
inženieris	engineer
štats	state
rūpniča	industrial
apprecēties	plant
piedāvāt	get married
nodibināt	offer
uzņēmums	found, establish,
nodarboties	set up
(ar)	enterprise, business
iekārtā	be occupied/ engaged (in)
cīts	system, equipment
nesen	tribe
	recently

Language in action

Newspapers

The main Riga daily papers are *Diena* ('The Day') and *Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze* ('The Independent Morning Newspaper'). There are of course plenty of local and specialized newspapers as well. The mastheads of the main papers are shown below.

Let us have a look at the contents of a Latvian national news-paper. By now you will have learned enough of the language to be able, with the help of a dictionary, to read some of the articles in the Latvian papers. Let's learn some useful vocabulary to find our way around them.

On the front page, above the masthead, you might find a brief weather forecast (*laika prognoze*). The main news item will generally be something of national importance, with a summary of what you will find on other pages. The leading article will appear on page 2, along with letters to the editor (*vēstules*). Pages 2 and 3 are generally given over to political debate under such general headings as *politika* 'politics', *notikumi* 'events', *fakti*, *komentāri*, or *problēmas*, *pētījumi* 'investigations, research', *skandāli*.

Further into the paper we would find interviews with prominent figures, and the *kultūra* 'culture, arts' section, along with small items of local news (*vietējās ziņas*). Economic news might come next: *saimniecība* 'the economy', *darijumi* 'business', (literally 'dealings'), *nauda* 'money'. Then we come across the international news

noliiks	intention
drūms	gloomy
īgoties (pec)	long, yearn (for)
sarakstīties	correspond
viensācīgs	simultaneous
trinda	exile
prombiūšana/ prombiūtne	absence
optimists	optimist
virzīties	advance
izjust	feel, sense
noteikts	definite
attīstības	develop
kopums	totality, whole

Language points

Phrases with tā and kā

- un tā tālāk
tā kā
it kā
gluži kā
tāpat kā
- and so on, etc.
as, since
as if
just/quite like
as well as

Impersonal verbs used in a passive sense

We have already met the third-person impersonal verb in earlier lessons. In Jānis' interview above, he used the phrase:

man piedāvāja iespēju

I was offered the opportunity

It is very common to use impersonal verbs in Latvian where we would use a passive form in English.



(ārzemju ziņas), usually confined to one page, under such headings as **politika**, **ekonomika** 'economics', **zināme** 'science'. This will usually be followed by the sports page (**sports**).

The back page generally carries smaller items such as minor news (**īsumā** 'in brief' or **sīka informacija** 'minor reports'), currency exchange rates (**valūta**), a more detailed weather report (**laika ziņas**), and of course the crossword puzzle (**krustvārdū mīkla**). If you can attempt that, your knowledge of Latvia and Latvian is coming on very nicely!

On different days of the week, the Latvian national papers also carry different kinds of supplements: for women (**sievietēm**), leisure (**atpūta**) or entertainment (**izklaide**), covering radio and television (either **radio un televīzija** or **tālzsirdze un tālhāde**) and events (usually under the heading **cēlvedis guide**). The newspapers also cater for the great interest in spiritual and supernatural things: don't be surprised to find detailed horoscopes, or even a whole page with the heading **Dvēselei for the soul**.

Newspapers also carry various kinds of classified advertisement, as we've already seen in lesson 9. In some papers there are entire pages of advertising (**reklāma**) and announcements (**paziņojumi**).

The Latvian national newspapers also act as government gazettes, giving the texts, in a supplement, of the latest laws and decrees (**likumi un lēmumi**) passed by the parliament (**Saeima**).

Broadcasting: television

There are two state-run national television channels in Latvia. In addition there are numerous commercial satellite channels. Russian television ('Ostankino') is also visible virtually all over Latvia, and its programmes are listed in the broadcast schedules. Below we see a typical schedule for Thursday to Saturday, taken from a daily newspaper. Only the main channels' offerings are shown here; study the listings and see if you can answer the questions below.

Ceturtdiena, 8.septembris

Latvijas TV I	21.10 Studinājumi. 21.15 Spogulis, <i>PRO</i> . 22.00 TV mārsslas filma <i>Modžejevska..</i>	20.05 Ugunsardzē/ F. Šķerts. Uvertūra ītālu stilā.
18.00 Šodien. Ziņas. 18.10 Latvijas TV – 40. TV iestudējums	23.15 Mūzikā apūtai. Nakts ziņas.	20.30 Panorāma (ar surdotulkojumu). 21.00 Novadu vēstis. 21.25 Spektors.
<i>Virtuozs</i> .	23.45 Nakts ziņas.	21.55 Reklāma un studinājumi.
19.20 Mākslas filma <i>Irisa</i> Klēvei. Lsērija. Ekrāns bēriņiem. <i>Pa saules zōka</i> <i>pēdām.</i>	22.00 Žodien. Ziņas (krievu val.).	22.00 Žodien. Ziņas Reklāma.
20.00 Raudījumu reklāma. 20.25 Reklāma. 20.30 Sports.	19.00 Telekompanija <i>LTS</i> . Ziņas. 19.20 Saeimas preses konference.	22.15 <i>VIA Baltica</i> . 22.20 <i>CFT</i> piedāvā ...

Piektdiena, 9.septembris

Latvijas TV I	21.05 Reklāma. 21.10 Studinājumi. <i>Piektdienas teātra vakars</i> .	20.30 TV veikals (<i>TV Shop</i>).
18.00 Šodien. Ziņas. 18.10 Rīgas kinostudijas multiplikācijas filma <i>Prīncese un</i> <i>puma</i> .	21.15 Latvijas TV – 40. Laumai Arājai – 80 gadu jubileja. Ž.P.Sarts <i>Altonus</i> <i>gāsteiknis</i> .	21.00 Populārzinātiskā programma <i>Pēc 2000 gada</i> . Ēterā – Vidzemes TV.
18.25 No Latvijas TV vestures. Iztīlma <i>Tēvu zeme 1961.g.</i> Spēle klavieru duets Antra un Normunds Vīksnes.	21.30 Starpbridī – Naktis ziņas.	21.45 Reklāma un studinājumi.
19.05 Arēna.	22.00 Žodien. Ziņas (krievu val.).	22.00 Žodien. Ziņas Reklāma.
19.25 Globuss. 20.00 Miedziņš nāk ... 20.25 Reklāma. 20.30 Panorāma. 20.55 Sports.	22.15 <i>E tele 141.</i> un 142.sērija. <i>LTS</i> . Ziņas. 23.10 Teletekompānija <i>Konakus</i> . 23.30 Starpnacionālās hokeja Tīgas sacīksies. <i>Pārdau- gava</i> – ACSK.	23.10 Teletekompānija <i>LTS</i> . Ziņas. 23.30 Starpnacionālās hokeja Tīgas sacīksies. <i>Pārdau- gava</i> – ACSK.

Sestdiena, 10.septembris

<i>Latvijas TV I</i>	<i>minis; 10. sērija Pa plānu ledu.</i>	<i>Latvijas TV II</i>
9.00 Rīgas Sv.Pāvila baznīca muzicē Alis Stepiņš.	19.00 A.Vivaldi. Kyrie. No Latvijas TV vēstures.	13.15 IR/TV kristīgā programma <i>Cēlī</i> (krievu val.).
9.35 TV muzikāla filma bērniem «Punktījū» uz Holandes kartei.	19.40 L.van Beethoven. Sonāte klāvīterēm do diez minorā.	13.45 TV <i>Polonia</i> (polu val.).
10.00 Mielasts ar Mārtiņu Vincenāti.	20.00 Ekrāns bēniem. 21.10 <i>Miedziņš nuk...</i>	14.45 Ukraina (ukrainu val.).
10.20 Brīvībiele uz teātri.	20.30 Panorāma. Sports.	15.35 <i>Latojotā 37 izloze. dzīve.</i>
11.00 Rēdereja.	21.05 Reklāmania.	15.40 No cikla <i>Tida ir...</i>
11.30 39.(noslēguma) sērija.	21.10 Studijājumi.	16.10 J.Ivanovs. Simtonišķais tēlojums
11.45 Globuss. *9.IX. ***	21.15 Radošā apvienība <i>Labvakar!</i> piedāvā ... Vakara intervija.	Varavīķene.
18.00 Šodien. Zinas. 18.05 Dānijas TV mākslas filma <i>Karola dumpinieki.</i> 9.sējū Dzīvs vai	21.40 Savai zemitei. 21.25 Mākslas filma <i>Eipojier dzīli!</i> Ar dienesmu dzīvi.	16.25 Regionālā TV piedāvā ... Ēierā - Vidzemes TV.
		16.55 Kristīgā pasaule.

Questions

On what time and on what channel would you find the following programmes?

- 1 a theatrical evening (Friday)
- 2 programmes in Polish and Ukrainian (Saturday)
- 3 the theatre (Saturday)
- 4 water sports (Saturday)
- 5 hockey (Friday)
- 6 children's programme (Thursday)
- 7 the lotto draw (Friday)
- 8 a piano duet (Friday)
- 9 a Danish film (Saturday)
- 10 news in Russian (Thursday)

Broadcasting: radio

The state-run Latvian Radio (**Latvijas Radio**) service operates on two networks; in addition there are several commercial stations. As with television, the commercial stations tend to provide more

foreign-made entertainment and music; more purely Latvian material is likely to be found on the national networks, which consciously aim at emphasizing Latvian content. The first network of Latvian radio provides an hourly news service. If you have the recordings you will be able to follow the newreader reading the following local items of news:

Latvijas Radio ziņas

Un tā, pusdienu ziņas:
Stockholmas Ekonomikas Skolā Rīgā šodien darbu turpinā starptautiskais seminārs 'Preventīvā Diplomātija', kuru ar Zviedrijas Ārlietu Ministrijas atbalstu rīko Baltijas Starptautiskās Humānās Izglītības centrs 'Sadarbība Mieram'. Seminārā tiek pārrunāts preventīvās diplomātijas jēdzienus un pielietojumu iespējas, dažādu konfliktu noregulēšanā, attiecinot to gan uz iekšpolitiskām, gan āpolitiskām Baltijas valstu problēmām. Par veiksmīgu preventīvās diplomātijas pielietojumu semināra dalībnieki nosauca Baltijas valstu sadarbību ar Eiropas Drošības un Sadarbības Organizāciju, Krievijas karaspēka izvešanas un arī ar pilsonības problemām saistīto jautājumu risināšanu.

Iekšlietu Ministrs Jānis Ādamsons uzskata, ka Robežapardzības dienesta pāreja no Aizsardzības Ministrijas Iekšlietu Ministrijas pakļautībā ir divu līdz trīs mēnešu jautājums. Pirmdien šo jautājumu paredzēts izskaitī Nacionālajā Drošības Padomē, un Ādamsons izteica cerību, ka Padome pieņems attiecīgu lēmumu. Lietuvas un Igaunijas pieredze rāda, ka robežsargi, esot Iekšlietu Ministrijas pakļautībā, veiksmīgāk sadarbojas ar citām tiesību aizsargāšanas struktūrām, un līdz ar to labāk veic savus uzdevumus – tā paskaidroja Ādamsons.

Bet šodien Valmierā pirmoreiz tiekas Latvijas un Somijas robežsargu pārstāvji. Tieks pārrunāts Somijas robežsargu vadības piedāvājums izstrādāt un realizēt apmācības programmu mūsu robežsargiem. Latvijas robežsargu brigādes virsnieks Gundars Aboliņš pastāstīja, ka robežsargu apmācība plānota Ziemeļvalstu palīdzības programmas Baltijas valstīm ietvaros. Ziemeļvalstis šādu iniciatīvu iznādījusas, nemot vērā nelegālo imigrantu, īpaši kurdu bēgli kustības pieaugumu pēdējā gada laikā. No Latvijas sarunās piedalās Robežsargu Brigādes robežu režima nodalas priekšnieks Arijs Jansons, un Vaimieras robežsargu bataljonā komandieris, un Latvijas un Igaunijas robežsargu pilnvarotais Jānis Virsis.

Pašlaik Rīgā, Filharmonijas Koncertzālē, notiek Apvienības

'Tēvzemei un Brīvībai' pirmais kongress. Šī kongresa noliks ir apvienot trīs daliborganizācijas, 18. Novembra Savienību, Nacionālo Apvienību 'Tēvzeme', un Latvijas Jauniešu Apvienību, 'Tēvzemei un Brīvībai'. Kongresā pieņems arī Apvienības 'Tēvzemei un Brīvībai' statutus un darba programmu.

Questions

(Additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary.)

- 1 Where is a seminar being held in Riga?
- 2 What is its theme?
- 3 Who is organizing it?
- 4 What is cited as a good example of this theme?
- 5 What is likely to happen to the Border Guard service?
- 6 Who is to discuss the issue, and when?
- 7 What is the advantage of this change?
- 8 On what evidence?
- 9 Who is meeting in Valmiera?
- 10 What will they discuss?
- 11 Who will help the Border Guards with what?
- 12 What are the ranks of the Latvian participants in the talks?
- 13 What is taking place in the Philharmonic Hall?
- 14 What is the aim of it?
- 15 What is the title of the new organization in English?
- 16 What else will take place there?

18 Jānis meklē savu senču saknes

Jānis seeks his family roots

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- use of the present participle with different subjects
- how to say 'plenty of'

Dialogue 1

A visit to eastern Latvia

In the last week of the family's stay in Latvia, Gunārs suggests to Jānis a car trip to western Latvia, to seek their father's birthplace

GUNĀRS: Tuvojoties jūsu atvalinājuma beigām, būtu interesanti apmeklēt mūsu tēva dzimto ciemu, ko tu, Jāni, nekad neesi redzējis. Viņa māja pastāv vēl šobaldien, un tā atrodas loti skaistā vieta, Preiļu tuvumā, Rietumlaigalē. Es loti labprāt brauktu uz turieni, bet mums ir vairs tik maz laika Latvijā. Zinu, ka piemēram Rundāles pilnums ir vēl ļaapskata, un tad –

GUNĀRS: Bet brauksim tieši caur Rundāli, un apskatīsim arī to! Ja izbrauksim agri no rīta, tad mums būs vēl daudz laika apmeklēt Rundāli. Turklat celš no Rundāles mūs vedis caur Dienvidzengali līdz Preiļiem.

JĀNIS: Nu, ko tu domā, Baiba?

BAIBA: Tā kā mēs vēl neesam apmeklējuši to apgabalu, es piekrītu labprāt! Bet vai būs iespējams apskatīt arī Jelgavu?

GUNĀRS: Protams, jo celš iet vispirms tieši uz Jelgavu!

Vocabulary

tuvoties	approach	pastāvēt	stand, exist
beigas (pl.)	end	(vēl) šobaldien	to this very day
dzimis	native, birth-	apskatīt	examine, look
nekad (+ negative verb)	never	tā kā	over since, as

Language points

Use of the present participle -ot with different subjects

We already know how to use the present participle -ot in Latvian, in sentences like this:

Dziedot nāca Jāpa bērni. **Beidzot** darbs bija paveikts.
John's children came singing. Finally ('in ending') the work was done.

In these sentences the two verbs describing simultaneous events have only one subject. But what do we say when two simultaneous actions are performed by different subjects? Take another look at the first sentence in the dialogue, where Gunārs says:

Tuvojties jūsu atlaiņajuma **beigām**, biļu interesanti apmeklēt mūsu tēva dzimto ciematu.

The meaning is:

As the end of your holiday approaches, it would be interesting to visit our Dad's home village.

The subject of the first clause, the subordinate clause, is **beigas** 'the end'; the subject of the main clause is the unstated 'it': 'it would be interesting ...'. We express this state of affairs by putting the subject of the subordinate clause in the dative case. As **beigas** 'end' is always plural, it appears in the dative plural. Expanding the first example, we might say:

Jāpa bērniem dziedot, citi bērni dansoja.
While John's children sang, the other children danced.

Note also the phrase **tā kā** 'since/as':

Tā kā mēs vēl neesam apmeklējuši to apgabalu, ...
Since we haven't visited that area yet, ...

Jānis writes a letter home

And so the family set off on their last excursion by car, through southern and eastern Latvia. That evening, on their return, this is what Jānis writes to a Latvian-born friend and business associate back in Australia:

Rīga, 24.jūnijā

Dārgais Normunds!

Gribētu Tev paziņāt mazliet par to, ko mēs esam darījuši te mūsu kopējā ekskursijā un par maniem iepaidīm. Esam ar vienu ģimeni līklo atbrīvošību no braucieniem uz manu tēva dzimto viestu, uz ko mēs nobelpūmām arī jāgām un Rundāles pilī. Līdz šim esam pārējus redzēti daudzi bēti Latvijā, bet nekas nav atstājuši man tik lieliskus iepividus, kā tieši Rundāle. Vai Tu esi kādējus to apmeklējis? Ja Tu to atceries, tad drīz vien tā bija torpis vel nerešanurēta, jo tika kopš 1972.gads pilo ēku atjaunota. Pilā satāvot no 138 iekābēm (bez gida jūrām; es tau nekaitīju!) un jau no piebraukuma cīlgā tā iegāktais līti kopsīstīgi. Varbūt Ta ganī, ka pilī tika uzaicīta 18. gadsimta, bet kōdien es uz jūniju, ka pie tās atšķiras darba strādājība ap tūkstošiem pieciņiem darbinieku! Neticami! Viens ikhōtelopas ir loti jauki izgrognotas.

Vocabulary

kopējs	common, joint	restaurēt	restore
atgriezies	return	atjaunot	restore,
daudz	plenty, a lot	sastāvēt	reconstruct
kas	leave	zīņa	consist
atšķāt	grand, great,		(piece of) news,
lielisks	magnificent		information
kādreiz	once, at some	skarifit	count
	time	izskatīties	look
toreiz	then, at that	iekšējpas	interior
	time	izgredznot	decorate

Language points

'Plenty'

Jānis wrote in his letter:

Līdz šim esam paspējuši redzēt daudz ko te Latvijā.
So far we have managed to see a lot here in Latvia.

Note the two phrases **līdz šim** 'so far, up to now', and **daudz ko** 'plenty, a lot'. We can also say:
Daudz kas ir noticis. (nom.)
A lot has happened.

Exercise

Now continue Jānis' letter to his friend in Latvian yourself.
But the same cannot be said of my father's farmhouse. My brother and I visited it today, and I saw it for the first time. My father had built the farmhouse himself out of pine-planks, and for a lot of money he had bought some farm machinery and started a farm. The farming (saimnieckošana) was starting to go well, but suddenly he had to leave it. After the war it became part of a collective farm (**kolkhozs**) and was left in a bad condition. But now we found that a new farmer has bought it with privatization certificates and is starting to live in it. He has even restored the old

sauna next to it. He bought the house from my brother, to whom it was given back by the state. My brother has his own business in Riga and did not want to move here.
I will see you soon in Adelaide, and tell you more about everything I've seen here, and the business side of my trip.
With sincere greetings,
Jānis

Reading passage

Rudens sola jaunu privatizācijas vilni

Below is a newspaper article which explains the process of privatization of property in Latvia, using the certificates (sertifikāti) which Jānis referred to in his letter. Additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary

Akvilina Liepiņa

Pēc Valsts statistikas komitejas ziņām, privātais sektors nacionālā kopprodukta veidošanā 1993. gada pirmajā pusgadā ir kļuvis noteicīsais – tā īpatsvars ir 55 procenti. Valsts īpašums palicis dominējošs vienīgi rūpniecībā. Ministru kabinets noteicis, ka ministrijām mēneša laikā jāiesniezēd valsts īpašumā nododamo un viss, kas ir privatizējams, arī būs privatizēts, un tie Latvijas iedzīvotāji, kas nebūs pamanijušies likt lietā savus privatizacijas sertifikātus, tā arī paliks beša. Par iedzīvotāju iespējam izmantonot ministru Druvi Skulti.

Lai pastiežinātu privatizāciju, Ministru kabinets Satversmes 81. panta kārtībā izdarījis grozījumus likumdošanā, kas lāuj saīsināt sertifikātu izsniegšanas termīnu līdz šā gada pēdējai dienai - 31. decembrim. Pēc tam tika seviskos gadījumos nosebojušies varēs atvert savu sertifikātu kontus. Tā ir sertifikātu īpašnieka katra paša brīva izvēle - piedāvāties privatizācijā vai palikt malā", teica Druvis Skulte. "Ja cilvēks nevēlas iesaistīties biznesā, valsts viņam dod sertifikātu sertifikātu pārdot. Valsti never vāinot, ja, sertifikātu pārdošot, īpašnieks saņem mazāku samaksu nekā sertifikāta nominālvērtība - 28 lati. Tas ir tāpēc, ka 28 lati nav valsts noteikta sertifikātu cena, bet vērtība, ar kādu sertifikāts var piedalīties privatizācijā. Pārdodot sertifikātu, par cenu īpašnieks vienojas ar pircēju – valsts šajā darījumā neiejaucas."

Vocabulary

Here is some additional vocabulary to help you. Note especially the idiomatic phrases: **līkt lietā** 'put to use'; **palikt bešā** 'be left with nothing'; **palikt malā** 'stand aside, remain outside'. Not all the new words are given here; you will be able to guess those 'international' ones – but pay attention to their form and gender!

kopprodukts	gross product (nacionālais kopprodukts)	kārtība	order (here: 'accordance')
	'gross national product')	izdarīt	do, make
veidot	form, shape, develop	grozjums	amendment
pusgads	half-year	likumdošāna	legislation (likums 'law'; likumigs 'legal')
noteicōs	decisive (noteikt 'determine')	saišināt	shorten (iss 'short')
īpatsvars	share, proportion	termiņš	term, deadline
īpasums	property	nosebojūšies	those who are late (noseboties 'be late')
mēneša lākā	within a month (lit. 'in a month's time')	konts	account (pronounced with a 'foreign' monoph- thongal o)
iesniegt	submit, hand in	vēlēties	wish, desire
ricība	disposal, possession	iesaistīties	join in, get involved
pamatnīties	manage, contrive	vainot	blame
pasteidzināt	hurry, hasten	vienuoties	agree
Satversme	Constitution	darījums	transaction, deal
pants	paragraph, article	iejaunkties	interfere, intervene

Questions

- When you have read through the text and understood it, try to answer these questions in English:
- What happened to the Latvian gross national product in 1993?
 - In what part of the economy did this not happen?
 - Who must do what within a month?
 - What will happen in the near future?
 - What does the change in the law allow?
 - Are there any exceptions?

19 Ģimenes pēdējās dienas Latvijā

The family's last days in Latvia

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- uses of the genitive case
- expressions of possibility

Dialogue 1

Revisiting the farm

Gunārs and Jānis and the family continue their exploration of the eastern province of Latgale. On their way back, they call in again to visit Ivars and Dace, who live, you will remember, near Madona. They spend a cosy evening sitting around the table chatting.

Ivars: Laipni lūdzam, tik jauku satikties atkal! Vai šodien ir tiesām jūsu pēdējā diena Latvijā?

Jānis: Jā, diemžel tīt vakarā mums jājido atpakaļ uz Austrāliju un darbu.

Dace: Atvainojums ir aizsliežis tik strauji! Bet labi, ka arī jums, Gunār un Ajā, bija dažas brīvas dienas. Bet ko tu pats domā, Jāni – kā tev patik mūsu dzīves veids šeit laukos, pēc Rīgas troksna un steigas?

Nu, man tā jāsalīdzina ar pilšējas dzīvi pie mums. Man šķiet, ka jūs dzīvojat daudz mierīgāk, nekā mēs.

Dace: Bet jāstrādā tikpat citīgi, jāpelna nauda arī šeit!

Baiba: Ko jūs mēdzat darīt, kad jums vajag atpūsties?

Dace: Mēs braucam pie Gunāra un Ajās uz Rīgu, protams! Bet ir gan reizes, kad vajag pašai savākties. Tad man pietiek Rīgas parku un ielu, un tādu pašu cilvēku kā es. Dažreiz Ivars ir mani aizved pie jūras. Vai braucam ar riteņiem.

Bet brīva laika mums parasti nav, vienmēr jāravē dārzs jābaro vistas un tā tālāt.
Ivars: Un vēl ir tādi uzdevumi, kādi ikvienamei jādarā mājās; jāmazgā vēlu un trauki, šādi tādi ikdiens pienākumi.
Dace: Bet šāda dzīve mums tomēr patik. Esam paši to izvēlējusies.

Vocabulary

laipns	kind, friendly; (Laipni lūdzam! 'you're welcome!')	savākties	gather one's wits/ strength
aizslīdēt	slip away	aizvest	take away
straujs	quick, rapid	ravēt	weed
steiga	hurry, haste	uzdevums	task
cītīgs	diligent	mazgāt	wash
atpūsties	relax	pienākums	duty
		izvēlēties	choose

Language points

Uses of the genitive case: a summary

By now you will be fairly familiar with the uses of the noun cases in Latvian. Perhaps the most versatile in its functions is the genitive: it has many more uses than the preposition 'of' does in English. In the dialogue above, for instance, Dace said:

Tad man pietiek Rīgas parku un ielu, un tādu pašu cilvēku kā es.
Then the parks and streets of Riga, and the same sort of people as myself, are enough for me.

Here she was using the genitive plural in a 'partitive' sense: 'some' of the parks, streets and people was what she meant. Let us gather together here for reference purposes all the uses of the genitive case:

1 possession, belonging: mājas grāmata 'the sister's book'; koka zari 'the branches of the tree'; pilšētas centrī 'the centre of the town';

2 materials, substance, composition: dēļu grīda 'floor of planks'; zelta gredzens 'gold ring'; niedru jumts 'roof of rushes' (thatched);

3 *use, purpose*: piena kanna 'milk jug', siena šķūnis 'hay barn', kāpostu muca 'cabbage barrel' (in which pickled cabbage is commonly stored and sold in Latvia);

4 *subject of an activity*: bērna raudīšana 'child's crying', pērkona spēriens 'thunder-clap', suna rejas 'dog's bark';
5 *object of an activity*: bērna audzināšana 'child-rearing', saistību izpilde 'fulfilment of obligations', vēlas mazgāšana 'washing of clothes';

6 *possession of a quality or quantity*: goda vīrs 'man of honour', svētku laiks 'festival time', pienākuma cilvēks 'dutiful person';

7 *description or classification*: Daugavas upe 'the river Daugava', latviešu tauta 'the Latvian nation', liepas koks 'linden tree';
8 (*as the second element with units of measurement*: kilograms sviesta 'a kilogram of butter', ducis karosu 'a dozen forks', maiss cukura 'a bag of sugar');

9 (*plural repetition for intensification*: gadu gadiem 'for years and years', grēdu grēdām 'heaps and heaps', kaudžu kaudzēs 'piles and piles');

10 *in conjunction with certain adjectives*: panākumu begāts 'rich in achievements', slavas kārs 'keen for fame', sniega plīns 'full of snow';

11 *as the object of certain verbs, in some cases with prepositions in a partitive sense*: alk laines 'thirst for happiness', kārot skaistuma 'desire beauty', ilgoties pēc draudzības 'long for friendship'; magazine', nedzert piena 'not drink milk', neredzēt nevienu putnu 'not see a single bird';

12 *as the object of a negative verb*: nepemēt žurnāla 'not take the magazine', nedzert piena 'not drink milk', neredzēt nevienu putnu 'not see a single bird';

13 *partitive, uncountable object*: ēst siera 'eat cheese', gribēties auglu 'want fruit', dzert vīna 'drink wine';

14 *as the object of certain prepositions* (see the list in lesson 15).

Exercise 1

Answer these questions about the dialogue:

- 1 No kurienes Gunārs ir atvedis Kalēju ģimeni?
- 2 Kas ģimenei jādara rī?
- 3 Kāds iepaids Jānim ir palicis par Ivara un Daces dzīvi laukos?
- 4 Ko mēdz Ivars un Dace darīt tad, kad viņiem vajag atelpas?
- 5 Kādi citi aipūtas veidi viņiem ir?
- 6 Vai viņu dzīve ir grūta?
- 7 Vai viņi ir apmierināti ar to?
- 8 Kur atrodas Ivara un Daces māja?

Dialogue 2

The next morning

Jānis asks Ivars about the most interesting and scenic route back to Riga

GUNĀRS: Diemžēl mums jāturpina brauciens, lai nokļūtu atpakaļ Rīgā šovakar.

Ivars: Bet gribētos redzēt šī novada ievērojamākās vietas. Kadu maršrutu tu ieteiktu?

Pati Madona ir patikama pilsētina, ar ēkām no zviedru laikiem, bet interesantāka ir Cēsvaine, pa ceļam no Madonas uz Gulbeni.

GUNĀRS: Bet – Tur atrodas savdabīga pils ar lielu parku, un ari bīskapa pils drupas. No Gulbenes iet Šaursliežu dzelzceļš uz Alūksni – šī pilsēta atrodas pie loti skaista ezera.

Ivars: Bet Ivar, mums trūkt laika, lai veiktu tādu garu braucienu uz ziemeļiem! Vēl jāsagatavojas celojumam! Mums vajadzētu nedaudz tiešāku ceļu.

GUNĀRS: Jā, žel! Tad jums visiem būtu jāatbrauc pēc iespējas drīz atkal uz Latviju! Es iesaku jums braukt caur Eiģliem un Vidzemes augstieni.

Vocabulary

urādīt	show, point out	drupas	ruins
ievērojams	remarkable,	šaursliežu	narrow-gauge
zviedru laiks	noteworthy	dzelzceļš	railway (šaurs 'narrow'; sliede 'rail'; if you can say this tongue-twisting phrase you've really learned Latvian!)
(sixteenth–seventeenth century, when the Duchy of Livonia was part of the Swedish empire)	the Swedish period		
savdabīgs	sagatavoties		prepare, get ready
bīskaps	augstiene		height, highland

'As ... as possible'

Ivars suggested to his guests:

Tad jums visiem būtu jāatbrauc pēc iespējas drīz atkal uz Latviju!
Then you all ought to return as soon as possible to Latvia!

In Latvian we say 'according to possibility' with the adverb (or adjective), usually in the comparative degree:

pēc iespējas ātrāk	as quickly as possible
pēc iespējas lētāk	as cheaply as possible

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 They were longing for their homeland.
- 2 Inside the restaurant we saw a large beer barrel.
- 3 Training dogs is said to be easy.
- 4 The dishes were full of water.
- 5 The leaves of the trees fall in autumn.
- 6 Pass me that bag of flour!
- 7 She never drinks coffee; she drinks only tea.
- 8 Are you ashamed of (**kaunčīties par**) your family's way of life?
- 9 Our friends were living to the north of the city.
- 10 Ask the doctor to come as quickly as possible!

Reading passage

*Here is a passage from a short story called **Šolaiku mīlas stāsts** ('A modern love story') by the young writer Aija Vālodze. Additional vocabulary is in the Glossary.*

Pulkstenis rādīja astoņi – laiku, kad bibliotēka jāsleždz. Šoreiz Jolanta bija palikusi viena: vadītāja jau otto nedēļu slimaja, un apkopējai vajadzēja nākt it kā nākamās dienas ričā vai pat tikai vakarā, vai varbūt aiznākamās dienas ričā – viņas ierakšanās laiku iepriekš nevarēja paredzēt. 'Dzimusi brīvībai' – tā Jolanta par vnu domāja nievīgā uzjautrinājumā, taču izteikt kādus pārmetumus neriskēja, jo tad sakās tik bezgalīga savas taisnības pierādīšana, ka beigās gribējās vai ausis ar pirkstiem bāzt ciet. Savas tiesības Biruta (tā apkopēju saueca) atgādināja arī tāpat vien: viasmaz

20 Atvadīšanās

Farewell

193

- BAIBA: Parādi man – nu, te ir tikai tavas lelles un grāmatas. Kur ir tavas drēbes?
- DZIDRA: Tur, kopā ar Imanta lietām viņa somā! Redzi: mans tautas tēps –
- BAIBA: Tas ir šausmīgi saburzījies! Dod man to. Es to pakošu atsevišķi. Un vēl?
- DZIDRA: Peldpalags, blūzes, zekes, kurpes –
- IMANTS: Un te ir manas peldbikses, kreklī, bikses, pižamass, kopā ar manām grāmatām.
- BAIBA: Jāni, vai tev ir mūsu dāvanas draugiem?
- JĀNIS: Jā, es neesmu tās aizmirsis. Bet Baiba, nedrīkst aizmirst vissvarīgākās lietas: lidojuma bileties un viesnīcas adresi, kur mēs uzturēsimies aptāšanās vietā!

Vocabulary

sakravāt	pack (up)	lietusmētelis	'raincoat' (mētelis)
ceļasoma	suitcase (soma 'bag'; somīja 'little bag, satchel')	dārgieta	'coat'
aizmirst	forget	kaste	jewel
uzvalks	suit	sakta	box
kreklī	shirt	aklarota	brooch
bikses	trousers	pasta	necklace
kurpe	shoe	sukta	pastie
apakšvelja	underwear	šurp	brush
svārki	(man's) coat;	vēlu	here, hither
zeki	(woman's) skirt		late (adverb; note the ending)
	(man's) sock;		doll
	(woman's)		awful, terrible
	stocking		get tangled
kaklasaitē	tie		pack
skujamais	razor (skū 'shave';		towel (for swimming)
aparāts	aparāts		blouse
	'apparatus, machine')		swimming-trunks
			present, gift
			important
			flight
			stay

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- how to say 'here' and 'there' in different contexts
- nouns formed from reflexive verbs
- the state of the Latvian language today

Dialogue 1

Getting ready to leave

The day has come for the Kalējs family to leave Latvia and fly home. Before Gunārs and Aija take them to the airport, Baiba has to pack the family's bags

- BAIBA: Tagad man jāsakravā cējasomas. Neko nedrīkst aizmirst!
- GUNĀRS: Vai tev ir tad saraksts, Baiba?
- BAIBA: Protams ka nē! Jāni, bērni, jūs varat man te palīdzēt!
- Kas vēl trūkst?
- Man jābūt uzvakam, četriem krekliem, pižamām, trīs biksēm, pāriem kurpijā, apakšveljai, svārkiem, zekēm – daudz pāriem zeku – divām kakkasaitēm un protams manām skujamajam aparātam. Kas vēl?
- Nu, kam ir kamera?

- JĀNIS: Tā ir jau iekravāta, manā somīnā. Un kas tev ir?
- BAIBA: Man ir šeit svārki, kleitas, zekes, lietussargs, lietusmētelis, makiskreklī, dārglietu kaste ar sakātām un kaklarotām – vēl trūkst zobu pasta un sukas! Bet bērni, jūsu lietu vēl nav sakravās! Atri, bērni, nāciet tuīt šurp, jo ir jau vēlu, un drīz muns jābrauc uz lidostu!
- DZIDRA: Bet mamma, man ir šeit viss savā somīnā!

Language points

'Here', 'there', 'where': stationary and moving

We already know the words for 'here' (šeit or te), 'there' (tur) and 'where' (kur). These words are used when referring to stationary positions. But when we want to refer to movement, as Baiba did when she asked the children to 'come here', we use forms ending in -p:

Nāciet šurp!

Come here!

Likewise we say **turp** for 'thither' and **kurp** for 'whither':

Kurp tu ejī?

Where are you going?

Es eju turp.

I'm going there.

This might remind you of the word **mājup** 'homeward', in contrast to **mājis** 'at home'.

Note also the expressions **šur tur** 'here and there' (in places); **šurpu turpu** 'here and there' (to places), 'to and fro'.

Nouns formed from reflexive verbs

Nouns describing the actions of most verbs end, as we know, in -šana (*rakstīšana* 'writing', *redzēšana* 'seeing', *darīšana* 'doing' and so on). As you will have noticed, these gerunds, as we call them, are declined like any ordinary feminine noun ending in -a. There is a slightly different type of gerund which is formed from reflexive verbs. The extra syllable of the reflexive stem -ies (*atgriežties* and so on) is reflected in the gerund by the ending -šanās instead of -šana. For example, from *klausīties* 'obeying, obedience'; but from *klausīties* 'listen' we get *klausīšanas* 'listening'. (But notice that the same doesn't necessarily apply to agent nouns, ending in a long vowel + j(i)e: strictly speaking, the word for 'listener' should be *klausītājies*, but this form is quite rare; much more common is simply *klausītājs*.)

These reflexive gerunds do not have complete declensions. The nominative and genitive forms are identical, and the only other form we find is the accusative, which ends in -šanos. As with the other (non-reflexive) gerunds, if the stem ends in a consonant + -t the consonant tends to be lost. So from *atgriežties* 'return' we get:

nom.	atgriešanās
gen.	atgriešanās
acc.	atgriešanos

And so, as you have worked your way through this course, it only remains to say **Uz redzēšanos Latvijā!**

Exercise 1

Insert the correct forms of the words in parentheses:

- Baiba ir beidzot (**sakrāvā**) ģimenes celasomas.
- (**Celasomas**) viņa (**kravāt**) savā vīra (**izvalks, kreklī, biksēs**) un (**skujujanais apārāts**).
- Vinai bija jāpalidzēt arī (**bērni**), jo (**palikt**) maz laika pirms (**aizbraukšana**).
- Gunārs if (**iekraut 'load'**) visas somas savas mašīnas bagāžas (**kaste** 'in the boot').
- Drīz viņi (**ierasties lidosta**), un bija (**atradišanās**) laiks.
- Dzidra un Imants (**teikt**), ka viņi jau tagad (**ilgoties**) pēc (**atgriešanās**).
- Baibai (**šķist**), ka viņa esot it kā ('as if') (**uzturiēties**) tikai dažas dienas Latvijā.
- Jānis ir (**aicināt**). Gunāru un Aiju pēc iespējas drīz atbraukt ciemos Austrālijā; tad viņš teicā: Uz (**redzēšanās**) pie mums!

Exercise 2

Here are the names of some colours in Latvian. Using these and the clothing vocabulary you have learned in this lesson, make your own list of the clothes you own. (By the way, 'wool' is *vilna*, so 'woollen' will be simply *vilnas*; likewise 'cotton' is *kokvilna*, 'silk' is *zīds* and 'nylon' is *neilons*.)

zils	blue	dzeltens	yellow	pelēks	grey
sarkans	red	balts	white	zalš	green
melns	black	rožains (or sārts)	pink	oranžs	orange
sudraba	silver	zelta (or zeltains)	gold	krāsa	colour

Language in action

The state of the Latvian language

Now that you have worked your way carefully through this course, you might be surprised to learn that many residents of Latvia do not know the language very well themselves, though Latvian is the official state language. You must remember that for the five decades of Soviet rule, a systematic process of Russification, involving mass immigration and industrialization, meant that Latvians were almost a minority in their own country. Russian took precedence over Latvian in many areas of life and of the country: in public life certainly, and where Latvians were in a minority, even in private life too. Therefore, since the restoration of Latvia's independence in 1991, the state has taken steps to redress this imbalance. Language tests are mandatory for both citizenship and work in the civil service. All signs are now in Latvian in public places, and legislation is enforced to ensure this. Naturally enough, many of Latvia's newer citizens still have an imperfect grasp of the language, and many native speakers who have had to endure the Russification of their life and their language are anxious for advice on correct usage. To help, and advise them there are newspaper columns and radio programmes: 'proper Latvian' usage is often debated and discussed in the media. Below you will find a transcript of one such radio programme, **Mūsu valoda**. If you wish to deepen your studies of this rich and fascinating language, you could do worse than follow some of the advice the commentator gives. Additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary.

publicēti intervijā laikrakstā 'Labrit' 6. oktobra numurā. Vispirmāk valoda ir jāsaklausa un jāizjūt, kā ar vecāmātes pasakām, ar tautas dziesmu. Tālāk šo izjūtu var kopī un attīstīt. Ikiiena valoda ir jāciena un jāmīl, bet it īpaši dzimtā valoda. Tik, cik svesvalodas es iemācījies, tik reizē labāk izproti savu dzimto valodu. Par savu valodu, par labi runātu valodu ir jāpriecejas. Bet kurš to vairs dara? Aplamības, nepareiziņas un valodas savādības nevienu nesatrauc: ne žurnālistu, ne futbolistu, ne valsts vīru. Ko es lai iesaku valodas garsās kopšanai? Cik daudz lasa Annu Brigaderi, Jāni Jaunsudrabīnu, Apsū Šķabu, Rūdolfu Blaumani, Jāni Akurāteru, Kārli Skalbi, Pliadoni, un Augustu Saulieti, un Edvartu Virzu: es nemaz nebilstu, ka līdzī derētu taču Kārla Milenbahha un Jāna Endzelīna Latviešu Valodas Vārdnīca. Lūk, tā ir mūsu bagātība! Ja kadām rastos vēlēšanās latviski runut gludi un lokāni, tas ir viengais ceļš. Tā pēc iespējas daudz jālasa folkloru un latviešu klasicķi. Lai nu rakstnieka Jakobsona padomi atrastu dzirdigus ausis!

Exercise 3

Write in the nominative case the names of the persons mentioned in this passage in other cases.

Reading passage

Mūsu valoda

Radio raidījumos jau vairākus gadus skanējuši aizrādījumi par dažādām kājumēm valodā. Sniegti ieteikumi, kā būtu pareizi vai labāk jārunā. Ir taisnība, ka nepareiziņu valodā joprojām ir daudz. Pret tām jāvēršas arī lai stiprinātu latviskas valodas izjūtu. Bet kuri lai vērojam labu valodu? Laikrakstos, radio, televīzijā, pat žurnālos, steigas dēļ ne vienmēr var novērst valodas negludumus. Bet lūk, kādus ieteikumus devīs prozas rakstnieks Valentīns Jakobsons: Tie

Verb conjugations

199

Latvian verbs are divided traditionally into three main conjugations, which are further subdivided into groups. The reference numbers here are also to be found next to each verb in the Glossaries at the end of the book. The conjugations are numbered 1–3; the groups are assigned the letters A–E.

Participles and other derived forms are formed in the same way for all conjugations, as described in the lessons, so if you know the present- and past-tense forms, you will be able to derive all other forms. There are only three verbs that are truly irregular and do not fit into any of these conjugations: *būt* ‘be’, *iet* ‘go’ and *dot* ‘give’.

Present tense

Past tense

nākt (1A) ‘come’ (present tense pl. -a-; stem vowel unchanged)

es	nāku	nāku
tu	nāc	nāci
viņš	nāk	nāca
mēs	nākam	nācām
jūs	nākat	nācāt
viņi	nāk	nāca

likt (1B) ‘put’ (present tense pl. -a-; stem vowel changes)

es	lieku	liku
tu	liec	liki
viņš	liek	lika
mēs	liekam	likām
jūs	liekat	likāt
viņi	liek	lika

rokt (1C) ‘dig’ (present tense pl. -a(n); stem vowel changes)

es	roku	raku
tu	roc	raki

viņš	rok	raka
mēs	rokam	rakām
jūs	rokat	rakāt
viņi	rok	raka

lauzt (1D) ‘break’ (present tense -j- or palatalized except tu forms; stem ends in consonant)

es	laužu	lauzu
tu	lauž	lauzi
viņš	lauž	lauza
mēs	laužam	lauzām
jūs	laužat	lauzāt
viņi	lauž	lauza

spēt ‘be able’ (stem ends in vowel)

es	spēju	spēju
tu	spēj	spēj
viņš	spējam	spējam
mēs	spējat	spējat
jūs	spēj	spēja
viņi	spēj	spēja

lūzt (1E) ‘be broken’ (present tense -st; tu form in -i)

es	lūstu	lūzu
tu	lūsti	lūzi
viņš	lūst	lūza
mēs	lūstam	lūzām
jūs	lūstat	lūzāt
viņi	lūst	lūza

domāt (2A) ‘think’ (present and past stems in -ā-)

es	domāju	domāju
tu	domā	domā
viņš	domājam	domājam
mēs	domājat	domājat
jūs	domā	domā
viņi	domā	domā

balsot (2B) ‘vote’ (present and past stems in -o-)

es	balsoju	balsoju
tu	balso	balso
viņš	balso	balso
mēs	balojam	balojam
jūs	balojat	balojat

vini	balso	baloja
<i>medīt</i> (2C) 'hunt' (present and past stems in -īr)		
es	medīju	medīju
tu	medi	medi
viņš	medi	medi
mēs	medījam	medījam
jūs	medījat	medījat
viņi	medī	medī

kavēt (2D) 'prevent' (present and past stems in -ēju)

es	kavēju	kavēju
tu	kavē	kavēji
viņš	kavē	kavēja
mēs	kavējam	kavējām
jūs	kavējat	kavējāt
viņi	kavē	kavēja

zināt (3A) 'know' (extra syllable -āj- in past tense; tu form in -i)

es	zinu	zināju
tu	zini	zināji
viņš	zina	zināja
mēs	zinām	zinājām
jūs	zināt	zinājāt
viņi	zina	zināja

gaidīt (3B) 'wait' (extra syllable -īj- in past tense; tu form in -i)

es	gaidu	gaidiju
tu	gaidi	gaidiji
viņš	gaida	gaidija
mēs	gaidām	gaidījām
jūs	gaidāt	gaidījāt
viņi	gaida	gaidija

gribēt (3C) 'want' (extra syllable -ēj- in past tense; tu form in -i)

es	gribu	gribēju
tu	gribi	gribēji
viņš	grib	gribēja
mēs	gribam	gribējām
jūs	gribat	gribējāt
viņi	grib	gribēja

Reflexive verbs

All reflexive verbs conjugate similarly, and they are numbered in the Glossaries according to the stems from which they are derived. There are two slightly different conjugations, the only difference being the length of the -ā- in the ending.

celties (1D) 'get up' (no vowel in 3rd person of present tense of celt: cej)

es	celos	celos
tu	celies	celies
viņš	cēlās	cēlās
mēs	cēlāmies	cēlāties
jūs	cēlātēs	cēlāties
viņi	cēlās	cēlās

skatīties (3B) 'look at' (-a in 3rd person of present tense of skatīt: skata)

es	skatos	skatos
tu	skaties	skatās
viņš	skatās	skatāmies
mēs	skatāmies	skatāties
jūs	skatāties	skatījās
viņi	skatās	skatījās

Key to exercises

203

Lesson 2

Exercise 1

1 Mēs nebraucam uz Rīgu. 2 Imants nerēdz ~~autobusu~~. 3 Dzīvoklis nav tālu no centra (or: Dzīvoklis ir netālu no centra). 4 No dzīvokļa viņi nevar redzēt Daugavu. 5 Jūs nebraucat pa Vecrigu. 6 Viņš nejet pie mums. 7 Es neeju ārā. 8 Es nesaprotu latviski.

Exercise 1

1 Es. 2. proti. 3. prot. 4. protam. 5. Jūs. 6. iet. 7. eju. 8. runā.

Exercise 2

1 Mana ģimene un es (or: Es ar savu ģimeni) esam pirmo reizi Latvijā. 2 Runāsim latviski! 3 Mēs esam Rīgas līdostā. 4 Vini iet ārā. 5 Mēs ejam uz mājām. 6 Saule spīd. 7 Viņi brauc/jet lēni. 8 -Es saprotu latviski, ja jūs runājat lēni.

Exercise 3

1 Vai Baiba prot angļiski? 2 Vai mēs braucam uz mājām? 3 Jāni, vai šodien ir skaista diena? 4 Dzidra, vai tu proti mazliet latviski? 5 Vai bērni brauc uz mājām? 6 Vai jūs esat dzīmis šeit? 7 Vai pie jums ir ziema? 8 Vai jūsu ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā?

Exercise 4

1 skaista; spozi. 2 ģimenes pases. 3 runā latviski, lēni. 4 Jāni, proti angļiski? 5 Austrālijā, Latvija. 6 esat pirmo reizi Rīgā. 7 Eset sveicināti. 8 Gunār, Latvija.

Questions

1 Kalēju ģimene ir Rīgas līdostā. 2 Darbinieks lūdz viņu pases. 3 Nē, Jānis un Baiba ir dzimusi Latvijā, bet bērni ir pirmo reizi Latvijā. 4 Viņus gaida Gunārs un Aija. 5 Gunāra sieva ir Aija.

Lesson 1

Exercise 1
1 sešas pases. 2 trīs mātes. 3 astoņi dēli. 4 septiņi trolejbusi. 5 divas ģimenes. 6 četras meitas. 7 deviņas upes. 8 piecas minūtes.

Exercise 2
1 Baibai ir vecs tēvs. 2 Gunāra ģimenei ir mazs dzīvoklis. 3 Manai sievai ir ērts krēsls. 4 Mums ir divas jaunas meitas. 5 Viņam ir jauna pase. 6 Viņiem ir veca mašina. 7 Dzidrai ir maza ģimene.

Exercise 3
1 Baibas tēvs ir vecs. 2 Gunāra ģimenes dzīvoklis ir mazs. 3 Manas sievas krēslis ir ērts. 4 Mūsu divas meitas ir jaunas. 5 Viņa pase ir jauna. 6 Viņu mašina ir veca. 7 Dzidras ģimene ir maza.

Exercise 4
1 Viņa mašina ir neērta. 2 Baibas dzīvoklis ir neērts. 3 Baibas dzīvoklis nav neērta. 4 Baibas dzīvoklis nav liels. 5 Gunāra dzīvoklis nav liels. 6 Gunāra mašina ir liela. 7 Gunāra mašina ir lieliska.

Exercise 5
1 Bērns gul pēc ilgā ceļojuma. 2 Tēvocs/Onkulis nes bagāžu iekšā. 3 Viņi ēd, un tad viņi var gulēt. 4 Ģimene ir klāt (abraukusi), bet viņi ir visi visai noguruši. 5 Tu varēsi specēties rit. Tagad ej gulēt! 6 Bet es gribu specēties tūlīt! 7 Nē, tikai rit, tad jūs varēsit spēlēties. 8 No Austrālijas uz Latviju ir ilgs ceļojums.

Exercise 7

- 1 skaitais skats. 2 mazais dārzs. 3 vecais tēvocijs. 4 priecīgā māte.
5 ērtā mašīna. 6 lielā upe. 7 vienkāršais nams. 8 ilgā nedēļa.

Lesson 3**Exercise 1**

- 1 desmit. 2 pusdeviņi. 3 bez ceturtķīja desmit. 4 septiņpadsmit minūtes pāri sešiem. 5 bez divdesmit septiņām minūtēm astoņi.

Exercise 3

- 1 Baiba grib palīdzēt Ajai. 2 Nē, jo Baiba ir atvainījumā. 3 Aija grib iet ārā un iepazīstīmāt viesus ar pilsētu. 4 Nē, vini brauc ar trolejbusu. 5 Vispirms vini brauc uz pilsētas centru. 6 Baiba grib redzēt vecās un jaunās ēkas, veikalus un parkus. 7 Jāni visvairāk interesē Vecrīgas vecās ēkas. 8 Viņš ir to mantojis no sava tēva.

Exercise 4

- 1 kas. 2 ko. 3 kādu. 4 kam. 5 ko. 6 ko. 7 kas. 8 kur.

Exercise 5

- 1 senām pilsetām. 2 tālām zemēm. 3 galddiem. 4 ielām. 5 kādām (dažām) lietām. 6 veikaliem. 7 saviem brāļiem. 8 trolejbusiem.

Lesson 4**Exercise 1**

- 1 Es gāju uz tirgu. 2 Mēs bijām Rīgas tirgū. 3 Irmants dabūs šokolādi. 4 Viņam bija jauna mašīna. 5 Saule spīdeja spozi. 6 Jūs dzivojāt dzīvoklī. 7 Mēs nepaspēsim iet uz veikalu. 8 Es tev solišu nopirk šokolādi.

Exercise 2

- 1 Es ietu uz tirgu. 2 Mēs buju Rīgas tirgū. 3 Irmants dabūtu šokolādi. 4 Viņam bija jauna mašīna. 5 Saule spīdētu spozi. 6 Jūs dzīvotu.

dzīvoklī. 7 Mēs nepaspētu iet uz veikalu. 8 Es tev solītu piikt šokolādi.

Exercise 3

- 1 Es iēju uz tirgu. 2 Mēs būsim Rīgas tirgū. 3 Irmants dabūšokolādi. 4 Viņam būs jauna mašīna. 5 Saule spīdēs spozi. 6 Jūs dzīvosiet dzīvoklī. 7 Mēs nepaspēsim iet uz veikalu. 8 Es tev solišu nopirk šokolādi.

Lesson 5**Exercise 1**

- 1 mācos. 2 mācu. 3 celies. 4 apskatās. 5 tiekamies.

Exercise 2

- 1 Viņa mācās latviešu valodu, lai saprastu latviešus. 2 Mēs audzējam bietes, lai barotu govis. 3 Es braucu uz Latviju, lai piedalitos apspriedē. 4 Mana māte dod man sviestmaizes, lai man būtu, ko ēst. 5 Es steidzīs, lai nokertu autobusu.

Exercise 3

- 1 Es negribu neko darīt. 2 Vai Jums nav naudas? 3 Man nekad neparīk celties agri. 4 Nekas nav noticis pie mums. 5 Man negaršo jūsu kartupeļi.

Exercise 4

- 1 Man jābrauc ar autobusu. 2 Cilvēkam jābūt draugiem. 3 Mums jāsteidzas uz pilsētu. 4 Viņai jādzēr daudz sulas. 5 Man jāzvan savai mātei.

Lesson 6**Exercise 3**

- 1 Manai māsai salist. 2 Darbs ilga visu dienu. 3 Trīs bērni skrēja pēc savas mātes. 4 Lietus jau līja, kad es atvēru savu lietussargu. 5 Pulksteni četros sākā līt (lietus). 6 Man šķiet, ka vīna ir pāzudusi.

Lesson 7**Exercise 1**

1 Ģimene ēdīs, dzers un dziedās Līgo dziesmas. 2 Laikam vini nevar. 3 Imants zina trīs vai četrus dziesmas. 4 Nedrīkst gulēt, un jālēc pāri ugunskuram. 5 Tas nozīmētu, ka atradējs gūtu laimi un miliešbu.

Exercise 2

1 Imants atceras astonas Līgo dziesmas, ko viņš iemācījas skolā. 2 Bet viņam neizdodas atcerēt visus vārdus. 3 Dzidra grībētu palikt pie ugunkurā visu nakti. 4 Jāņos latviesi dzied dziesmas, kas (ir) saistītas ar savām tradīcijām. 5 Cilvēkiem patīk svīnēt ļānus, lai satiktos ar saviem draugiem. 6 Alu dzerot, mēs visi dziedājām vecās Līgo dziesmas. 7 Sieru ēdot, Baiba un Jānis atceras savas jaunības ļānus.

Exercise 3

darīs, ugunkura, ēdīs, dzers, dziedās, grībētu, ritam, sacīja, nebūs, ugunkura, sacīja, dzer alu, ēd sieru. atceras, paražu, saistītas Jāniem, negul Jāņu nakti, iemantotu veselību. domā, svin, satiktu jaunus draugus, jaunas draudzenes.

Lesson 8**Exercise 1**

1 Vilciens jau aizbrauca. 2 Kaut arī viņa man noliedza, es tomēr slaucu govis. 3 Ko viņi tev kliedza? 4 Vini neko neteica. 5 Pagājušo otrdien mēs braucām ar autobusu uz Ogrī. 6 Autobuss aizbrauca no Preiļiem bez trijām minūtēm septiņos. 7 Mēs lūdzām šoferim apstāties. 8 Vai jus sniedzāt viņam biletī?

Exercise 2

1 pabeidzām. 2 zviedza. 3 aizledza. 4 sauca. 5 slaucām. 6 palūdzu, pasniedza. 7 noplūca. 8 sasniedzāt.

Exercise 3

pabeigšana, zviegšana, aizliegšana, saukšana, slaukšana, palūgšana, pasniegšana, noplūkšana, sasniegšana.

Exercise 4

1 Virtuvē nav puķēju. 2 Viņai nav vīra. 3 Uz galda nav tējas. 4 Mežā nebija uguns. 5 Skolā šodien nebija lekcejas. 6 Laukā nav lielu zirgu. 7 Autobusā nebūs pasažieri. 8 Viņai nebija patikamu atmīnu (or: viņai bija nepatikamas atmīnas).

Lesson 9**Exercise 1**

1 Viņas dzīvoklis ir nodrošināts ar visām ērtībām. 2 Sašmiekam ir tiek labi samaksāts. 3 Latvija ir reti apmeklēta zeme. 4 Jau trīs gadus mana māsa meklē labu celtu māju. 5 Jauniem precētiem cilvēkiem ir grūti dabūt labu dzīvokli. 6 Jums būs jāstāv rindā.

Exercise 2

1 stāvēdamī. 2 privatizēti. 3 precēto. 4 īrēdamī. 5 skatīdamies, beidzot. 6 zwanot, pārdopta.

Lesson 10**Exercise 1**

Labrit, dakter Liepin!
Labrit, Priediša kungs! Kā jums klājas?
Man sāp mugura. Lūdzu, vai jūs varetu to apskatīt?
Jā, protams. Cik ilgi tā jums sāp?
Jau trīs dienas, kopš es palīdzēju savai mātei nest bagāžu uz autoostu.
No āgerbiet kreklu, lūdzu. Vai sāp šeit?
Jā, ļoti sāp. Ir degošas sāpes.
Ari šeit?
Nē, ne tik daudz.
Būtu labāk veikt rentgenu. Vai jūs varētu atmākt rīt lai izdarītu to?

Jā, dakter.

Labi. Ejet uz polikliniku un sameklējet māsu.
Paldies, dakter. Uz redzēšanos!

Exercise 3

- Augošam bērnam vajag daudz miega.
- Mana māte skrēja pēc braucēja vilcienu.
- Vīns ielēca tekošajā upē.
- Topošas mātes nedrīkst smēkt.
- Ārsis apskaitija manu sāpošo krūti.
- Skaties uz kritošo sniegu.
- Nākamajā nedēļā vini brauks uz Lietuvu.
- Vīni satiksies ar lietuviski runojāšiem cilvēkiem.

Lesson 11

Exercise 1

- Mans vectēvs ir vecāks nekā tavējais.
- Jā, bet tavējais ir veselīgākās.
- Šim maišam jābūt tavējam, jo manējais ir sarkans.
- Latvija ievēd dažu pārtikas produktus, bet tā rāzo arī savējos.
- Mēs audzējām tomātu savā lauku mājā; vai jūs tos audzējat savējā?
- Otrā māja ir mūsējā, un piekta ir vinējā.

Exercise 2

- Dažadas alu šķirnes tiek/tika nogaršotas.
- (unchanged)
- Manas firmas produkti tiek izvesti uz ārzemēm.
- Alus tiek patēriņš lielā apjomā.
- Pašnāju tirgus tiek apmierināts.
- Mūsu alus tiek ievests (citās zemēs).
- Esmi tieku spiests grūta stāvoklī.

Exercise 3

- tieki ienestas.
- tieki pievilkta.
- tieki sagaidīta.
- tieki salīdzināti.
- tieki pēlināta.
- tieki baudīti.
- tieki pateikts.
- tieki saprasta.

Lesson 12

Exercise 1

- baltkrievs, baltkrieviete. (there is no word for 'Briton'; instead **anglis, angliete** would be used for British people generally). vacietis, vāciete, francūzis, francūziete (note!). itālieši, itāliete, spāniets, spāniete, čehs, čehiete, ungārs, ungāriete, polis, poliete, amerikāni, amerikāniete, kanādiets, kanādiete, ukrainijs, ukrainiete, turks,

turciete (note!). kīniets, kīniete, japānis, japāniete, dienvidāfrikāni, dienvidāfrikaniete.

Exercise 2

- Daudz latviešu dzīvo Kanādā, Amerikas Savienotajās Valstīs, Australijā, Lielbritānijā un citur, bet protams visvairāk latviešu dzīvo Latvijā.
- Igaunija un Lietuva ir mūsu vistuvākās kaimiņvalstis.
- Ziemeļāfrika ir pasaules vistvarstākā daļa.
- Kas ir vispopulārākais/vismilākais sporta veids Spānijā?
- Somi spēlēja vakar pret zviedriem, un somiem bija noteikti labākā komanda.

- Daži no maniem vismilākiem draugiem dzīvo Dānijā.
- Esmu braucis/braukusi uz ārzemēm dažas reizes, visbiežāk uz Krieviju, Baltkrieviju un Igauniju.
- Līdz šim gadam krieviem bija vislabākā komanda – vini bija Eiropas negāzītie/neuzvarētie čempioni.

Exercise 3

- Firmās puses beigas negaidīti mačā starp 'Gemmū' un 'Olimpiju' – pēc Krieviju 11 m. soda sitienu, 'Gemma' atradās ar 1:0 vadību. Tikai 63. minūte Kārklinš sasniedza 1:1 (vienu pret vienu), un tikai pēdējās desmit minutēs paveica Andersons 3:1 uzvaru 'Olimpijas' labā ar diviem vārtiem/goliem.

Lesson 13

Exercise 1

- Nācis, nākuši, nākuši, nākušas. Kliedzis, kliegusi, klieguši, kliegušas. Braucis, braukusi, braukusi, braukus, Skatījis, skatījusi, skatījusi, skatījus. Pircis, pirkusi, pirkusi, pirkus, pirkus. Izmantojis, izmantojusi, izmantojusi, izmantojus.
- Nākošs, nākoša, nākoši, nākošas. Kliedzošs, kliedzoša, kliedzoši, kliedzošas. Braucošs, braucoša, braucoši, braucošas. Skatošs, skatoša, skatoši, skatošas. Pērkošs, pērkoša, pērkoši, pērkošas. Izmantojošs, izmantojoša, izmantojoši, izmantojošas.

Exercise 2

- teica, šķita, ir, jautāja, piesāņots, paskaidroja, neizlaiž, neapstrādātu, pieaug, jācīnās, piebilda, sākuši apzināties, jārūpējās, tiek ieplūdinātas, jāaizsargā, tic, neapdraud.

Exercise 3

1 Ceļa satiksme galvas pilsētā pieaug arvien straujāk. 2 Rūpnieciskas vielas tiek ielaistas upē. 3 Latvija ir tikai maza valsts, un tāpēc tā jāaizsargā. 4 Bērni nespēja braukt visu ceļu no šejiņes līdz Dubultiem ar riteni. 5 Padonju laikā cilvēki neapzinājās vides aizsardzības svārīgumu. 6 Mūsu dienās (Tagad) cilvēki riņķejas vairāk par savu veselību. 7 Ar riteni braucot, viņi pābrauca pāri Daugavu pa Vansu tiltu. 8 Uz lab pusi skatoties, es redzēju diivas pret mani braucošās mašīnas.

Language in action

The signs in alphabetical order, match with numbers 8, 13, 14, 5, 15, 9, 4, 10, 3, 12, 1, 7, 6, 16, 2, 11, 17.

Lesson 14**Exercise 1**

Kartupeli sacepums ar krējumu un ikriem
kartupēlis
sāls
pipari
krējums
melnie ikri

(varbūt arī) ievārtijums vai sēnes
Marinēta sīlķe ar kartupeli

silķe
(2) sīpoli
ūdens
etikis
ella
lauru lapas
cukurs
pipari
kartupelis
sviestis
skābs krējums
dilles

Exercise 2

Verbs in first recipe:
nomizot, sarivēt, sagriezt, pielikt, likt, sakarsēt, izlīdzināt, cept, pārliet, uzbērt, ēst.

Verbs in second recipe:
marinēt, nomērcēt, notirīt, sagriezt, aplaucēt, likt, pievienot, pasniegt, ielikt, uzlikt, aizīt, cept, ieskelt, pildīt, uzkausīt, (*Verdošs* 'boiling' is a participle of the verb *vīrt*).

Exercise 3

1 Mēs esam vienmēr mežinājuši dzīvot ērti. 2 Tomēr tikai nesen mūsu dzīve ir kļuvusi ērta. 3 Viss uz galda izskatās tik labi. 4 Gatavo visas pankikas plānas. 5 Es atnācu pie viņem kā negaidīts viesis. 6 Viņa mani uzņēma kā neaicinātu viesi. 7 Man garšo savais alus auksts. 8 Nomazgā sīlķes tīras.

Lesson 15**Exercise 1**

1 Viņš esot pēkšni kļuvis bagāts. 2 Es dzirdēju, ka viņa nekad neatgriežoties mūsu ciema. 3 Jūs neesot nekad rakstījis vēstuli savā mūžā. 4 Vini man teicā, ka ārsis būsot kārt (šeit) pēc stundas. 5 Tas esot visvecākais ciemats Latvijā. 6 Lietuvieši esot nabadzīgāki nekā latvieši, bet es neticu tam. 7 Norvēģija esot Eiropas visdārgākā zeme. 8 Tu esot nodomājis pirkst viņiem dāvanu?

Exercise 2

1 Tev vajadzētu patiesām palīdzēt savai mātei. 2 Kad es atgriezišos, es tev pastāstišu visu, ko esmu dzirdējis. 3 Mēs sekojām upei līdz jurai. 4 Latvijai ir vairakai skaisti ezeri, ko jums vajadzētu redzēt. 5 Pirms es atnācu šurp, veikals bija gandrīz tukšs. 6 Kopš mēs atbraucām Latvijā, mums nav bijusi neviena brīva diena. 7 Mēs (stai)gājām caur Valku līdz Igaunijas robežai. 8 Saka, ka viņa esot precējusies, bet tev vajadzētu jautāt viņai.

Lesson 16

Exercise 1

1 Jānis Rainis bija viens no vissvarīgākajiem latviešu rakstniekiem.
2 'Pūt, vējini' tika rakstīta latviešu teātrīm Pēterpili. (Note: **rakstīta** is feminine because the 'understood' subject is a play, **luga**, which is also feminine. **Pēterpils** is nowadays called **Pēterburga**.) 3 Lugas pirmā izrāde notika tūkstoš deviņsimti trispadsmitajā gadā. 4 Pirma un naktī bija lugas nosaukums, kas izteica trimdienieka Raina ligošanos pēc savas dzimtenes. 6 Ar laiku tā kļuva par Raina vispopulārāko un visbiežāk iznādotu lugu. 7 Lugas pirmā aina (sarbiba) norit maltuvē. 8 Luga ir dzejā izteikts mīlestības stāsts.

Lesson 18

Bet to pašu nevar teikt par manā tēva lauku māju. Mēs ar savu vecaistēvys bija pats būvējis māju no priedes dēliem, un par daudz naudu viņš bija iepircis dāžas lauksaimniecības mašinas un nodibinājis saimniecību. Saimniekošana sākās iet labi, bet tad uznāca/sākās karš un viss beidzās. Pēkšni vinam bija to jaastāji. Pēc kara tā kļuva par kohzoza daļu un palika slīktā stāvokli. Bet tagad mēs atrādām, ka jaunsaimnieks ir to nopircis ar privatizācijas sertifikātiem un sāk tajā dzīvot. Viņš ir pat atjaunojis blakus esošo pirti. Viņš nopirkta māju no mana brāla, kam to atdeva valstis. Manam brālim ir paša uzņēmums Rīgā, un viņš negribēja pārcelties šurp. Es tev redzēšu drīz Adelaidā, un tev pastāstišu vairāk par visu, ko esmu šeit redzējis, un par savu brauciena biznesa pusī.

Ar sīrsniņiem sveicieniem,

Jānis

Lesson 19

Exercise 1

1 Viņš ir atvedis vinus no Latgales. 2 Ģimenei jāizlido uz Austrāliju.
3 Viņam šķiet, ka viņi dzīvo mierīgi. 4 Viņi mēdz braukt pie Gunāra un Ajās uz Rigu. 5 Dažreiz viņi brauc uz jūru, vai ar riteniem.
6 Jā, viņu dzīve ir diezgan grūta. 7 Jā, šāda dzīve viņiem patik.
8 Tā atrodas laukos, Madonas rajonā.

Exercise 2

1 Viņi ilgojās pēc savas dzimtenes. 2 Restorāna iekšpusē mēs ieraudzījām lielu alus mucus. 3 Sunu trenēšana esot vieglā. 4 Bļodas bija pilnas ūdens. 5 Koku lapas nokrit rudenī. 6 Pasniedz man to miltu maiusu! 7 Viņa nekad nedzer kafiju; viņa dzer tikai tēju. 8 Vai jūs kaunaaties par savas ģimenes dzīves veidu? 9 Mūsu draugi dzīvoja ziemelos no pilsētas. 10 Lūdz ārstam atrākt pēc iespējas ātrāk!

Lesson 20

Exercise 1

1 sakrāvājusi. 2 Ceļasomās, kravāja, uzvalku, kreklus, bikses, skujamo aparātu. 3 bēriņiem, palika, aizbraukšanas. 4 uzkrāvis, kaste. 5 atnāca lidosā, atvadišanas. 6 teica, ilgojas, atgriešanās. 7 šķita, uzturējusies. 8 aicinājis, redzēšanos.

Exercise 3

Anna Brigadere, Jānis Jaunsudrabiņš, Apsīšu Jēkabs, Rūdolfs Blaumanis, Jānis Akurāters, Kārlis Skalbe, (Vilis) Plūdonis, Augustis Saulietis, Edvarts Virza, Kārlis Mīlenbahs, Jānis Endzelīns.

English-Latvian glossary

The vocabulary listed below consists of all words needed in the translation exercises. Adjectives are given in their m. singular form. Noun gender is indicated where it differs from the usual pattern. Verbs are marked for conjugation type.

(be) able	varet (2D), spēt (1D)	(be) ashamed	kārūtēties (3C)	Canada	dienā
about	par	ask (enquire)	jautāt (2A), (request)	capital city	dāgs, mīš
abroad	ārzemēn, uz ārzemēm		iesaukt (1D)	car	noteikts
according to	pēc	Australia	Austrālijā	nest (1A)	Dānija
ache	sāpēt (3C)	autumn	rūdens (f.)	svīnēt (3C)	paust (1C)
achieve	sasniegst (1D)	(be) aware	apzināties (3A)	certifikāts	błoda
action	darbība	back (n.)	mugura, (adv.) a apakal	krēks	dariņ (3B); veikt (1D)
Africa	Afrika	bad	siliks	čempions	ārstis; daktēris
after	pret	bag	maiss, soma	siers	suns
against	lidosta	barrel	muca	krūtis	dzert (1D)
airport	viss	be	būt	bēns	šoferis; vadītājs
all	drīkstēt (3C)	beautiful	skaitis	tūvs	vieglis
(be) allowed	gandriz	because	jo, tāpēc ka kļūt (1E)	kafija	ēst (1A)
almost	jau	become	alus	auksis	saimniecība
already	arī	beer	lūgt (1D)	salt (1E)	astonījums
also	kaut gan, kaut	beg	sākt (1A)	(at)nākt (1A)	citur
although	arī	begin	Baltkrievija	vide	tukšs
always	viennēr	Belarus	ticība	nodibināt (3A)	beigties (1D)
and	un	belief	ticēt (3C)	Igaunija	est (1A)
arm	roka	believe	starp (div)ritenis	Eiropas	pat
arrive		between	liels	arvien	arvien
as	ķā	bicycle		vis	vis
		big		apskaft (3B)	apstākļi
				trīndinieks	dārgs
				izteikt (1D)	izteikt (1D)
				acs (f.)	acs (f.)
				gimene	(no)krīst (1C)
				lauku mājas;	gimene
				saimniecība	lauku mājas;
				tēvs	tēvs
				labā	labā
				pietācis	pietācis
				aizast (1C)	aizast (1C)
				soms	soms
				uguns	uguns
				pirmais	pirmais

five	pieci	hot	karsts	Lithuania	Lietuva	northern
flat (apartment)	dzīvoklis	hour	stunda	dzivot (2B)	dzivot (2B)	Norway
flour	milti	house	māja	ilgs	not	ne
-mill	maltuve	how	kā; (- are you?)	ilošanās	now	tagad
flow	tecēt (3C)		kā tev/jums	(pa)statīt;	nowadays	mūsu dienās
folk	tauta		klājas; (much)	skatīties (3B);	o'clock	pulksten
foodstuff	pārkas		etc.) cik	(appear)	often	bieži
for	produkts	however	tonēr; taču	izskatīties;	old	vecs
forbid	aizliegt (1D)	hurt	sāpet (3C)	(for) meklēt	on	uz
four	četri	I	es	(2D)	only	tikai
free	brīvs	if	ja	daudz	open	atvērt (1D4)
friend	draugs	import	ievest (1A)	mīlestība	ordinary	parasts
from	no	importance	svārigums	bagāza	ought	vajadzētu
full	pilns	important	svārigs	mašīnas	our	mūsu
garden	dārzs	industrial	rūpniecisks	(pa)gatavot	outside	ārā
get	dabūt (2A);	inside	iekšā; iekšpusē	(2B); taisit	over	pāri
go	sapēnt (1A);	it	tas	(3B)	own	paša; savs
	nokļūt (1E)	journey	braucēns;	izdoties	pain	sāpes
	iet; (by vehicle)	joyful	cēlojums	daudz	pancake	pankūka
good	braukt (1D)	jump	priecīgs	precīsts	part	dāja
-bye	labs	kind (n.)	lēkt (1D)	precīties (3C)	pass	pasniegt (1D)
grandfather	uz redzēanos!	lake	veids	Jāņi	passport	pase
Great Britain	vectērs	landlord	ezers	slaukt (1D)	pay	maksāt (2A)
greet	Lielbritānija	last (adj.,	saimnieks	minūte	penalty	sods
grow (intr.)	sveiciāt (3A)	ultimate)	pēdējais;	jaunkundze	people	cīvēki
guest	(pie)augt (1A);		(previous)	nauda	perform	izrādīt (3B)
half	audzēt (2D)		pagājušais; (v.)	vairāk	performance	izrāde
hand (v.)	viesis		īeg	rits	pine	priede
hard (difficult)	puse	Latvia	Latvija	visvairīk	plank	dēlis
he	pasniegt (1D)	Latvian (n.)	latvieši;	māte	play (n.)	luga; (v.)
health	grūts		(language)	parcelīties (1D)	play (n.)	spēlēt(ies)
healthy	vījs	leaf	latviski	daudz		(2D)
hear	veselība	learn	lapa	vārds;		lūžu!
help	veselīg(s)	leave (behind)	(ie)mācīties (3B)	nosaukums		(loti) daudz
here	dzirdēt (3C)		atstāt (1D);	vajadzība	please!	nabadzīgs
herring	palidzēt (3C)		(depart)	kaimiņš	plenty	populārs
home	šejiene;		ainzraukt	nekad	poor	dāvana
homeland	(hitter) šurp		(1D); aiziet	jauns	popular	privatizacija
	silķe	leg	kāja	blakus	present (n.)	ražot
	mājas	letter	vēstule	nakts (f.)	produce	aizsargāt (2A)
	dzimtene	life	dārve	devīpi	protect	aizsardzība
		like (be pleasing)	patīkt (1C)	né	protection	nodrošināt

five	pieci	hot	karsts	Lithuania	Lietuva	northern
flat (apartment)	dzīvoklis	hour	stunda	live	dzivot (2B)	Norway
flour	milti	house	māja	long (time)	ilgs	not
-mill	maltuve	how	kā; (- are you?)	longing	ilošanās	now
flow	tecēt (3C)		kā tev/jums	(pa)statīt;	(pa)statīt;	tagad
folk	tauta		klājas; (much)	skatīties (3B);	skatīties (3B);	mūsu dienās
foodstuff	pārkas		etc.) cik	(appear)	(appear)	pulksten
for	produkts	however	tonēr; taču	izskatīties;	izskatīties;	bieži
forbid	aizliegt (1D)	hurt	sāpet (3C)	(for) meklēt	(for) meklēt	vecs
four	četri	I	es	(2D)	(2D)	uz
free	brīvs	if	ja	daudz	daudz	tikai
friend	draugs	import	ievest (1A)	mīlestība	mīlestība	atvērt (1D4)
from	no	importance	svārigums	bagāza	bagāza	parasts
full	pilns	important	svārigs	mašīnas	mašīnas	vajadzētu
garden	dārzs	industrial	rūpniecisks	make	(pa)gatavot	mūsu
get	dabūt (2A);	inside	iekšā; iekšpusē	(2B); taisit	(2B); taisit	ārā
go	sapēnt (1A);	it	tas	(3B)	(3B)	pāri
	nokļūt (1E)	journey	braucēns;	izdoties	izdoties	paša; savs
	iet; (by vehicle)	joyful	cēlojums	daudz	daudz	sāpes
good	braukt (1D)	jump	priecīgs	precīsts	precīsts	pancake
-bye	labs	kind (n.)	lēkt (1D)	precīties (3C)	precīties (3C)	part
grandfather	uz redzēanos!	lake	veids	Jāņi	Jāņi	part
Great Britain	vectērs	landlord	ezers	slaukt (1D)	slaukt (1D)	pass
greet	Lielbritānija	last (adj.,	saimnieks	minūte	minūte	pass
grow (intr.)	sveiciāt (3A)	ultimate)	pēdējais;	jaunkundze	jaunkundze	pay
guest	(pie)augt (1A);		(previous)	nauda	Miss	penalty
half	audzēt (2D)		pagājušais; (v.)	money	money	people
hand (v.)	viesis		īeg	more	more	perform
hard (difficult)	puse	Latvia	Latvija	morning	morning	izrādīt (3B)
he	pasniegt (1D)	Latvian (n.)	latvieši;	most	most	izrāde
health	grūts		(language)	mother	mother	pine
healthy	vījs	leaf	latviski	move	move	plank
hear	veselība	learn	lapa	much	much	play (n.)
help	veselīg(s)	leave (behind)	(ie)mācīties (3B)	name	name	play (n.)
here	dzirdēt (3C)		atstāt (1D);	need (n.)	need (n.)	spēlēt(ies)
herring	palidzēt (3C)		(depart)	neighbour	neighbour	(2D)
home	šejiene;		ainzraukt	never	never	lūžu!
homeland	(hitter) šurp		(1D); aiziet	new	new	(loti) daudz
	silķe	leg	kāja	next	next	nabadzīgs
	mājas	letter	vēstule	night	night	populārs
	dzimtene	life	dārve	nine	nine	dāvana
		like (be pleasing)	patīkt (1C)	no	no	privatizacija

purge	ķīstīties (2C)	sin	grēks	ticket	biljet	United States	(of America)	(Amerikas)
quick	ātrs	since	kopš	time (quantity)	laiks; (occasion)	Savienotās		
quite	visaī	sing	dziedāt (3C)	reize	nogurt (1E)	Valstis		
rain (n.)	lietus; (v.) līt	sister	māsa	(get) tired	nogurt (1E)	Iedz		
	(1E)	six	sesi	to	uz	dzeja		
rapid	straujš	sleep (n.)	miegs; (v.) gulēt	today	šodien	uzvara		
rare	rets	slow	(3C)	tomato	tomāts	skats		
really	(pa)tiesām	nesen	lēns	tomorrow	rit	cimens		
recently	sarkans	small	mazs	too (also)	ari	apmeklēt (2D)		
red	paklāt (1B)	smoke	smēkēt (2D)	tooth	zobs	iet, staigāt (2A)		
remain	atcerēties (3C)	snow	smiegs	towards	pret	gribēt (3C)		
remember	nogērbt (1D)	so	tilk; (so that) lai	town	pilsēta	mazgāt (2A)		
remove	restorāns	some	dāzi	tradīcija	tradicja	ūdens (f.)		
restaurant	atjaunot (2B)	son	dīļs	satiksme	satiksme	ceļš		
restore	atgriezties (1D)	song	dīzems	vilciens; (v.)	vilciens; (v.)	mēs		
return	bagāts	soon	dīzīz	trenēt (2D)	trenēt (2D)	nedēļa		
(intr.)	labā (puše)	Soviet	Padomju	braukt (1D)	braukt (1D)	labi		
rich	upe	Spain	Spānija	uzņemt (1A)	uzņemt (1A)	kas		
right (side)	skriet (1C/D)	speak	runāt (2A)	koķs	koķs	kad		
river	Krievija	sport	sports	brauciens	brauciens	kāpēc		
run	krievu	stay	palīkt (1B)	trolejbuss	trolejbuss	vārds		
Russia	pirts (f.)	still	tomēr	mēģināt (3A)	mēģināt (3A)	darhs		
Russian	sacīt (3B), telkt	(nevertheless)	apstāties (1D)	otrdiena	otrdiena	pasaule		
sauna	(1D)	stop	stāsis	divi	divi	rakstīt		
say	aina	story	viela	liežuvars	liežuvars	rakstnieks		
scene	skola	substance	pēķsnī	nevarēts,	nevarēts,	gads		
school	jūra	suddenly	saule	negāzis	negāzis	jā		
sea	otrais	sun	ziedrs	tēvočis,	tēvočis,	vakar		
second	redzēt (3C);	Swede	galds	onkulis,	onkulis,	tu; (pl., polite)		
see	(catch sight	table	runāt (2A)	krustīvs	krustīvs	jūs		
	of) ieraudzīt	talk	tēja	sapast (1C)	sapast (1C)	jauns		
	(3B)	tea	tas; (conj.) ka	negādīs	negādīs	jaumba		
seem	ķīst (1B)	that (prep.)	teātris	neāicinās	neāicinās			
settlement	cīmats	theatre	vīnu					
seven	septini	their	tad					
several	daži, vairāki	then	vīri					
she	vina	they	plāns					
shine	spīdēt (3C)	thin	(no)domāt (2A)					
shop	veikals	think (intend)	sis					
shout	kliedz (1D)	this	trīs					
side	puše	through	caur					

Latvian-English glossary

Adjectives are given in their masculine form. Nouns' gender is indicated where it deviates from the normal pattern. Verbs are marked for conjugation type. Words are given in the usual Latvian dictionary order: that is, accented consonants are treated as separate letters in alphabetical order, accented vowels are not.

ābele	apple-tree	aizīt	wrap up (1A)	surroundings	atcelš	way back
ābi	both	aizvest	take away (1A)	clean, tidy (1B)	āterēties	remember (C3)
ābols	apple	akmens	stone	heating	atelpa	respite, leisure
absolūts	absolute	alga	wages	heat (3A)	ātgādināt	remind, recall (2A)
ācmīredzot	obviously	allaž	always	clasp, grasp (1D)	ātrīties	return (1D)
ācs (f.)	eye	alus	beer	incorrectness	atgriezīties	depart
ādrese	address	ap	round	adhere (1C)	atīet	restore (2B)
āgrs	early	apakša	bottom, below	circle	atjaunot	again
āģentūra	agency	apakšējs	lower	exchange (3B)	atkāl	dependent
ai!	oh!	aparāts	apparatus	visit (2D)	atkārīgs	repeat (2B)
aicināt	invite	apavi	footwear	about	atkārtot	put off (1B)
aizbēgt	flee	aphūve	building	satisfy (3A)	atlīkt	allow (1D)
aizbraukt	leave, depart	apcīenot	visit, call on (2B)	scald (2D)	ātjaudīt	memory
(1D)	(1D)	apdare	decoration	get married (C3)	ātmīja	wake up (1E)
aiziet	go away; pass,	apdraudēt	endanger (3C)	restrict (2B)	ātnostīties	arrive (1A)
	elapse	apdzīvot	inhabit (2B)	bracelet	ātnākt	bring (1A)
aizlidot	fall asleep (1B)	apesīns	orange	warm (3B)	ātnest	back
aizmīgt	forget (1E)	apgabals	region	examine (3B)	ātpakal	relax (1D)
aizmirst	remark (3B)	apgavot	assert (2B)	look around	ātpūstīties	find (1C)
aizrādīt	protection	apgērbīties	get dressed (1D)	disdain (C3)	ātrās	quick
aizsardzība	protect (2A)	apnis	hop	circumstance	āsevišķs	separate
aizsargāt	preventative	apiņģēt	realize (1D)	stop (1D)	āskriet	repulse (1A)
aizsargātēkis	measure	apjoms	volume	process (2A)	āstāt	come running (1C)
aizslidēt	slip away (3C)	apkaipošana	service	embrace (1D)	ātšķirīgs	leave (1D)
		apkalpot	serve (2B)	roll over (1D)	ātšķirīties	different
				district	āttiecība	differ (1D)
				unit (2B)	ātstātīties	relation
				be aware (3A)	ātvalinājums	develop (3B)
				with	ātvasēloties	holiday
				outside	ātvieglojot	sprout
				external	ātvērt	open (1D)
				also	ātvalinājums	atvase
				doctor	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				foreign country,	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				abroad	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				always	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				abroad	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				tear	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				ass	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				astoņi	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				astonpādsmīt	ātvalinājums	atvērt
				ātvalinājums	ātvalinājums	atvērt

augā	top, upper part	biete	beet(roof)	cena	price
augt	grow (1A)	biezs	thick, dense	strive (1D)	strive (1D)
augums	stature	bieži	often	centrāls	central
auss (f.)	ear	bikses	trousers	centrs	centre
Australija	Australia	bilst	say (1E)	cepeškrāsns	cepeškrāsns
austrumi	east	biljetē	ticket	cepīlis	cepīlis
autobuss	bus	birojs	bureau	cerēt	cerēt
automātsiks	automatic	bistaps	bishop	ceturksnis	ceturksnis
autoosta	bus station	bistams	dangerous	ceturtdiena	ceturtdiena
avīze	newspaper	bizness	business	cienmats	cienmats
azais	meal	blakus	beside	ciems	ciems
bads	hunger	blokēt	block(ad)e	iet ciemos	iet ciemos
bagāts	rich	blūze	(2D)	cienīt	go visiting
bagāža	luggage	błoda	blouse	ciest	respect (3B)
haidīties	fear (3B)	brālis	dish	ciet	suffer (1D)
balīgīs	timid	brauciens	brother	ciets	shut, closed
balkons	balcony	brāukt	journey	cik	hard
balti	the Balts	bridis	travel (1D)	cikos	how (much)
baltmaize	white bread	briesmas	moment	cīts (f.)	at what time
balts	white	brīst	danger	cīlēks	tribe
balkis	beam	brīvs	ford (1C)	cīnīties	person, man
bārda	beard	brokastis	free	cirkls	struggle (3B)
barot	feed (2B)	brūns	breakfast	cījāds	circus
basketbols	basketball	brūtgans	brown	cīts	different
baudīt	enjoy (3B)	brūvēt	bridge room	cītur	other
baznica	church	burkāns	(archaic)	cītrons	elsewhere
bāzt	push, poke (1D)	burvis	brew	cūka	lemon
bēda	care, worry	būtā	ball	cukurs	pig
bēdāt	grieve (2A)	būtāks	carrot	čempionāts	sugar
bedre	pit	būvēt	wizard	čempions	championship
heidzot	at last	caur	be (irreg.)	četratā	champion
beigas	end	celts	essential	četri	the four of
beigt	finish (1D)	caur	build (2D)	četrpadsmīt	(them)
benzīns	petrol	celtēs	chicken	dabisks	four
bēmība	childhood	celtēs	through	dabūt	fourteen
bērns	child	celtēs	raise, build (1D)	daddis	natural
bet	but	celtēs	get up	dailrade	get (2D)
bez	without	celtēs	building	dakšīpa	burdock
bezgalīgs	endless	celasoma	suitcase	dalīt	handicraft
bibliotēka	library	ceļojums	journey	divi	fork
biezpiens	curds	ceļot	travel (2B)	divipadsmīt	divide (3B)
biedrs	comrade	ceļš	road, way	part	be divided

beitē	thick, dense	bēzī	action	darbība	action
biezs	often	bikses	worker	darbinieks	worker
bilst	trousers	biljetē	workshop	darbs	workshop
bilete	say (1E)	birojs	work	dārgieta	jewel
bureau	ticket	bistaps	dear, expensive	dārgs	dear, expensive
bustams	bureau	bistams	do (3B)	darītava	do (3B)
bizness	bishop	biskups	brewery	dārzenī	brewery
blakus	dangerous	būtā	vegetables	dārzs	vegetables
blokēt	business	būtāks	garden	dati	garden
blockēt	beside	būtāks	data	daudz	much
block(ad)e	block(ad)e	būtāks	present	dāvana	present
(2D)	(2D)	būtāks	sometimes	dāzēlīz	sometimes
blūze	blouse	būtāks	various	dāzāds	various
błoda	dish	būtāks	some	dāzīvet	here and there
brālis	brother	būtāks	nose	dēlis	plank
brāukt	journey	būtāks	son	dēls	son
bridis	travel (1D)	būtāks	because of	dēl	because of
briesmas	moment	būtāks	fit, suit (2D)	derēt	fit, suit (2D)
brīst	danger	būtāks	sausage	desna	sausage
brīvs	ford (1C)	būtāks	ten	devīni	ten
brokastis	free	būtāks	nine	dībēns	nineteen
brūns	breakfast	būtāks	bottom	dīemžēl	bottom
brūtgans	brown	būtāks	unfortunately	dienā	unfortunately
brūvēt	bridge room	būtāks	day	dienaksts	day
bumba	(archaic)	būtāks	twenty-four	dienvidi	twenty-four
burkāns	brew	būtāks	hours	Dievs	hours
burvis	ball	būtāks	south	diezgan	south
būtā	carrot	būtāks	god	dileris	god
būtāks	wizard	būtāks	enough, quite	dilles	enough, quite
būtāks	be (irreg.)	būtāks	dealer	divāns	dealer
būtāks	essential	būtāks	dill	divesmit	dill
būvēt	build (2D)	būtāks	sofa	divi	sofa
caur	chicken	būtāks	twenty	divipadsmīt	twenty
celtēs	through	būtāks	two	(div)ritenis	two
celtēs	raise, build (1D)	būtāks	twelve	dīzoties	twelve
celtēs	get up	būtāks	show off (2B)	show off (2B)	show off (2B)

doma	thought, idea	ekonomisks	economic	garša	taste	iecenīt	respect, like,
domāt	think (3A)	elektrība	electricity	garšīgs	delicious	admire (3C)	
dot	give (irreg.)	elpot	breathe (2B)	garšot	taste good	imagine (2A)	
döties	set off	ella	oil	garums	length	inhabitant	
draudi	threat	ērtība	comfort,	gatavot	prepare, make	entrance	
draugs	friend	(draudzene)	convenience	gatavoties	(2B)	ieguldīt	invest (3B)
	(girlfriend)	ērtis	comfortable	gatavys	prepare	iegut	obtain (1E)
drēbes	clothes	es	I	gaume	ready	iejusties	get used to, fit
drīkstēt	may, be	ēstgrība	eat (1A)	gäzt	taste	into (1C)	into (1C)
	allowed	etlikis	appetite	gids	overthrow (1D)	iekārta	system
drīz	soon	ezers	vinegar	glabāt	guide	iekārtojums	order,
dross	safe	firma	lake	glāze	keep (2A)	cultivate (1D)	arrangement
drums	gloomy	folja	company	glīts	glass	iekopt	
drupas	ruins	futols	foil	gluds	pretty, handsome	ielēkt	admire (2C)
drusku	a little	gadījums	football	glūzi	smooth	ielikt	imagine (2A)
drusa	cornfield	gadīties	event	godīgs	quite	iemācīties	learn (3B)
durvis (pl.)	door	gads	chance, happen	gors (f.)	honest	iemantot	gain (2B)
dzelzceļš	railway	gadīsants	(3B)	grāmata	cow	iemest	throw in (1A)
dzeramnauka	tip	gaidīt	year	graustis	hovel	ienaidnieks	enemy
džeriens	drink	gailis	century	grēda	pile	ienākt	come in, enter
džert	drink	galdzīns	wait (3B)	gredzens	ring		
-džiedāt	sing (3C)	gaita	cock, rooster	grībet	want (3C)		
džiesma	song	gaita	air	grībēties	want, feel like		
džilš	deep	gaisi	gait, pace,	grīda	floor	ienest	
džimis	born	gaisi	course	grīsti	ceiling	iepazīšanās	
džimšana	birth	gaitenis	corridor	grīpa	influenza	iepirkt	
džint	be born (1E)	gājums	course	grozāns	revolving	ieplēst	
džintene	homeland	galapunkts	terminus	grozs	basket	ieplūdināt	
džimts	native	gāds	table	grupa	group	iepriekš	
džintars	amber	gaisi	end	grūts	hard, difficult	iepriekšējs	
džirdēt	hear (3C)	galava	head	gulēt	sleep (3C)	ierasties	
džirdīgs	keen, sharp	galvapsīcēta	capital city	gulta	bed	ieraudzīt	
džist	die down (1E)	galvenais	chief, main	gulamistaba	bedroom		
džit	drive (1B)	gan	indeed	gulbīve	log-house		
džive	life	gan ... gan	both ...	gurķis	cucumber		
dživoklis	flat, apartment	gandīz	and	gūt	get, obtain (1E)	ierikot	
dživot	live (2B)	gar	almost	gīmene	family	iesacīt	
édiens	meal	garām	along	hokejs	hockey	iesildīties	
Europa	Europe	garāža	past	iebadīt	shove, push	ieskats	
eja	passage	gars	garage	(3B)	(3B)	iespaidīgs	
éka	building	garš	spirit			iespaidīgs	
			long			invade (1C)	

garša	taste	iecenīt	respect, like,
garšīgs	delicious	iedomāties	admire (3C)
garšot	taste good	iedzīvotājs	imagine (2A)
garums	length	iejeja	inhabitant
gatavot	prepare, make	ieguldīt	entrance
gatavoties	(2B)	iegut	invest (3B)
gatavys	prepare	iejusties	obtain (1E)
gaume	ready	into (1C)	get used to, fit
gäzt	taste	system	into (1C)
gids	overthrow (1D)	order,	order,
glabāt	guide	arrangement	arrangement
glāze	keep (2A)	cultivate (1D)	cultivate (1D)
glīts	glass	inside	inside
gluds	pretty, handsome	interior	interior
glūzi	smooth	jump in (1D)	jump in (1D)
godīgs	quite	put in (1B)	put in (1B)
gors (f.)	honest	learn (3B)	learn (3B)
grāmata	cow	gain (2B)	gain (2B)
graustis	hovel	throw in (1A)	throw in (1A)
grēda	pile	enemy	enemy
gredzens	ring	come in, enter	come in, enter
grībet	want (3C)	(1A)	(1A)
grīda	want, feel like	ienest	carry in (1A)
grīsti	floor	iepazīšanās	acquaintance
grīpa	ceiling	iepirkt	buy, purchase
grozāns	influenza	(1B)	
grozs	revolving	ieplēst	
grupa	basket	ieplūdināt	
grūts	group	iepriekš	
gulēt	hard, difficult	iepriekšējs	
gulta	sleep (3C)	ierasties	
gulamistaba	bed	ieraudzīt	
gulbīve	bedroom		
gurķis	log-house		
gūt	cucumber		
gīmene	get, obtain (1E)		
hokejs	family		
iebadīt	hockey		
(3B)	shove, push		
ieskats	(3B)		
iespaidīgs	invade (1C)		
iespaidīgs			

iespēja	possibility	isums	brevity	izvest	kakts
iespējams	possible	it	(emphatic particle)	ja	kakis
iestarpināt	interject (3A)	ītin	rather	Jā	kalendārs
iešķelt	split (1D)	izangstne	growth	Jāqi	kalns
iet	go (irreg.)	izcept	bake (1A)		mountain, hill
ietekīt	advise (1D)	izdoties	succeed, be	jau	maid-servant
ietekmēt	influence (2D)		managed	jau	while; until
ietilpt	be included (1E)		(irreg.)	jaukt	kamēr
ietriekt	plunge in (1D)	izgulēties	have a sleep (3C)	jauneklis	kamera
ievārijums	jam	iziet	go out (irreg.)	jaunība	kanalizācija
ievērojams	remarkable,	izirēt	hire out (2D)	jauns	kāpēc
	considerable	izjukt	break up (1C)	jaunkundze	kāposti
ievērot	observe (2B)	izjust	feel (1C)	jauns	kareivis
ievēst	import (1A)	izkrist	fall out (1C)	jauns	karote
ievietot	put, place (2B)	izlaist	release (1D)	jebkurš	karsis
iezogojums	enclosure, fence	izlase	selection; team	jel	karš
Igaunija	Estonia	izfidzināt	smooth out	jo	kārtā
igauņišs			(3A)	joma	kārtējums
ikdiema	week-day	izmantot	use (2B)	joprojām	kartupelis
ikdienišķs	everyday	izmērīt	measure, survey	juniors	kas
ikri	caviar		(2C)	jūra	kasīs
ikviens	each and every	iznākt	emerge, turn out	jūrmala	katls
ilgoties	long for, yearn		(1A)	jūs	katrs
ilgs	(2B)	izņemot	except	just	kaņja
ilgt	long (time)	izņemt	take out (1A)	justes	kaut
	last, continue	izolēt	insulate (2D)	jīsu	kilograms
interessants	interesting	izprast	understand (1C)	ka	klātis
interese	interest	izskaitīties	look (3B)	kā	klāties
interesēt	interest	izsole	auction	kādreiz	klātisies
	(1E)	izšķirt	decide (1D)	kāds	klātis
intervija	interview	izprast	shovel out (2D)		kleķis
inženieris	engineer	izteikt	express (1D)		klepot
ipāšnieks	owner	iztikt	subsist, manage		klēts (f.)
ire	special		(1C)	kafejnīca	klubs
irēt	rent	izturēt	endure (3C)	kafija	klusība
īstalcīgs	tenant	izvairīties	avoid (3B)	kaimiņš	kļūme
īss	brief	izvedot	form, organize	kaitēt	kļūt
istaba	short		(2B)		klubs
īstis	room		choice	kārtotā	sekrecy
	genuine, real		choose (3C)	kārtotās	mishap, failure
			develop (1D)	koksls	become
				koksls	tree; wood

kolēģis	colleague	ķiploks	garlic	lēnām	slowly	līdzī!
komanda	team	labdiņ!	hello!	lēns	slow	līgt
komercdarbība	commercial	labprāt	willingly	lepls	proud	lupata
	activity	labs	good	libetis	Livonian	lūzt
kontrole	control, checking	labvakar	good evening!	Iecis	bay, gulf	lauds
kontrolēt	check (2D)	labvēlīgs	good evening!	fideris	leader	launs
kooperatīvs	co-operative	lācis	favourable	lidojums	flight	laut
kopā	together	lai	bear	lidosta	airport	loti
kopejs	common	laidars	may	lidz	until; with	loti
kopt	cultivate, nurse (1B)	laiķam	stockyard	lidzīens	level; even	loti
kopums	totality	laiķraksts	probably	lidzīgs	with	loti
koris	choir	laiķs	newspaper	lidzvars	similar	loti
krāsns (f.)	stove	laine	time; weather	lidzvērīgs	balance	māgs
krasts	coast, shore	laimīgs	happiness	liekties	equivalent	māgs
kravāt	pack (2A)	laipns	happy	liekoties	bend (1D)	māinit
krāvums	pile	laist	kind	liekoties	mostly	māinites
kreisais	left (side)	latva	let (1D)	lieisks	magnificent	mājsjans
krējums	cream (putu)	lampa	boat	liels	big, great	māiss
	whipped cream)	lapa	lamp	liesma	flame	māize
kreklis	shirt	lappuse	leaf	lieta	thing	māja
krelles	beads	lapsa	page	lietot	use (2B)	mājoklis
krēsls	chair	lāpstīpa	fox	lietus	rain	mājup
krietns	thorough,	lasīt	ladle	lietusmētelis	raincoat	mākonis
	considerable	lat	read; gather (3B)	lietusvars	umbrella	mākonains
krūms	bush, shrub	latvetis	Latvian	liga	league	maksi
krustmāte	aunt	Latvija	Latvia	ligava	bride	maksiāt
krustītēvs	uncle	latviski	in Latvian	ligavānis	bridegroom	maksiums
krūts (f.)	breast, chest	lauki	country-side	ligo	Ligo (song sung	māksla
kults	cult	launks	field		at mid-	māla
kumelš	foal	laukainieciņa	agriculture		summer)	māls
kungs	gentleman, Mr	laukums	(sports) field,		joyous	maltuve
kupena	snow-drift		square		put, lay (1B)	malums
kur	where	lauri	laurels	linija	seem, appear	manējs
kuriene	shoe	ledus	ice	lit	level	mans
kurpe	run, ply (2D)	lekcija	lesson	linija	precipitate, fall	mantot
kursēt	who, which	lēkt	jump (1D)	lokālis	(1E)	marinet
kurš	furnace	lelle	doll	lokāms/lokans	member	maršruts
kurtuve	brick	lemt	decide (1D)	logs	route	māsa
kiegelis	sprat		decision	loma	sister	māsa
ķilava					car; machine	māšina
					mother	māte

mats	hair	minute	bad	nemēt
maz	little	mocīt	small	neliels
mazgāt	wash (2A)	moderns	not at all	nemaz
mazgātava	laundry	multa	unfinished	nepabeigts
mazliet	a little	mundrums	fairly often	nereti
mazs	little, small	mūrēt	carry (1A)	nest
mazvarīgs	unimportant	build (in stone/bricks) (2D)	dirty	nefirs
mēbelēt	furnish (2D)	(brick/stone)	awkward,	nevēikls
medus	honey	wall	clumsy	nevēiens
mēgt	be in the habit of (1D)	musdienu	nobody	nevīens
meita	daughter	mūsējs	not	nevis
meitene	girl	mūsu	who knows	nez(in)
meklēt	seek, search (2D)	mute	reed	niedre
melns	black	muzikants	trifle	nievīgs
mēnēsis	month; moon (poet.)	mūžs	scornful	niezēt
mēness	moon	nahags	itch (3C)	nikt
mērce	sauce	nacionāls	pine away (1E)	nikt
mērens	moderate	nakamais	from	no
mērkis	goal, target	nākt	end (1D)	nobeitg
mērs	measure, extent	nākties	employ (3A)	nodarbināt
mēsti	we	naktis (f.)	be engaged in	nodarboties
mēsti	measure, extent	namipāšnieks	(2B)	novidināt
mēs	we	nams	intend (2A)	nodomāt
mēsti	manure	nasta	deliver (irreg.)	nodot
mētāls	metal	nauda	whittle (1D)	nodrāzt
mētelis	coat	nav	provide (3A)	nodrošināt
mētiens	throw	nazis	arrange (2D)	noformēt
mētrs	metre	ne	supply (2A)	nogādāt
mēzglis	knot	ne	taste (2B)	nogarsot
mēzs	forest	neatliekamība	get tired (1E)	nogurt
miegis	sleep	nebūt	feel ashamed	nokaunēties
mierīgs	peaceful	nedaudz	(3C)	oga
mieži	barley	nedēja	get to, arrive (1E)	nokļut
miksts	soft	negaiss	shade, tint	ogot
milesība	love	nejaūss	decide (1D)	oktobris
mīlēt	love (3C)	nekā	deny (1D)	ola
mīlti	flour	nekad	put aside (1B)	operators
mīlžigs	huge	nekas	warehouse	optimists
mīls	dear, beloved	nekātītēne	purpose	osta
minēt	mention (3C)	minimum	soak (2D)	otriņa
minimums				otras
				nomērēt

ozols	oak	pārāk	along, on, by
pa		parasts	increase (3A)
paaugstināt		parausgs	raise, lift (1D)
pacelt		parāža	go travelling (2B)
paceļot		parcelties	kiln
paceplis		pārdot	stand, tolerate (1D)
paciest		pārdzīvot	hardish
pacelets		paredzēt	whisper (3C)
pacets		pareizs	do (3B)
pačukstēt		pārējais	adviser
padarīt		pāri	council; Soviet
padomdevējs		pāris	(piece of) advice
padome		pārīt	pass, hand
padoms		parkets	(irreg.)
padot		parks	last
pagājušais		pārkert	pagan
pagans		pārlecināties	small rural
pagasts		district	
		pārliegt	service
		pārmainīties	hang up (1D)
		pārmetums	subordinate
		pārraidīt	thank you
		pārskaities	help (3C)
		pārsteigt	help, assistance
		pārtikā	increase (3A)
		pārunāties	assistant
		pārzināt	remain (1B)
pakalpojums		teach (3B)	teach (3B)
pakart		manāt	foundation, basis
paklants		pamānis	achievement
paldies		pāmācis	pancake
pāldzēt		pamanīties	frying-pan
palīdzība		pāmais	fern
palīelīnāt		pānakums	pretty large
palīgs		pānkūka	about, for
palikt		panna	phenomenon
pāmāci		pāparde	show (3B)
pāmanīties		pāprāvs	(habit)
pāmais		par	habitat
pānakums		pārādība	pastāvēt
pānkūka		pāradums	pastāvīt
panna			

pilnīgs	complete	publicēt	publish	realizēt	realize (2D)
pils	full	puđele	bottle	reāls	practicable
pils (f.)	castle, palace	puisīs	fellow, lad	recepte	recipe
pilsēta	town	puke	flower	redakcija	editorial office
pirāti	pepper	pūlis	crowd	redžēt	see (3C)
pirāgs, pīrādzīns	pic, pasty	pulks	regiment; crowd	reiss	trip
pircejs	buyer	pulkstenis	o'clock	reiz	once
pirksts	finger	punkts	clock	reize	time, occasion
pirkt	buy (1B)	purvs	point	reklama	advertising
pirmais	first	pusdiena	bog, marsh	reķināt	calculate (3A)
pirms	before	pusdienuot	dinner, lunch	reķins	bill
pirts (f.)	sauna, bath-	puse	dine	remontēt	repair (2D)
plāns	house	puslalks	half, side	remonti	repairs
plašs	thin	pusotra	half-time	resus	stout, fat
platība	wide, broad	pusstunda	one-and-a-half	restauråt	restore (2D)
planuļi	space, area	püst	half an hour	restes	railings
planšas	shelf	radinieks	blow (1D)	restorāns	restaurant
plecs	lungs	rādīt	relative	reis	rare
plīts	shoulder	rādīties	show (3B)	rezerve	spare (part)
plant	stove	ragana	show oneself,	rezultats	result
prasīt	cut, mow (1D)	rags	look	rietumi	west
prast	ask, require (3B)		witch	rike	throat
	know (how,		horn;	rikoties	act (2B)
	language)	(1C)	promontory	rinda	queue
prāvs	(1C)	raiđums	broadcast	riņķis	circle
prece	considerable	raizēties	worry (2D)	risi	rice
precēt	article	rajons	district	risināt	solve (3A)
precīzs	marry (3C)	rakstamīšana	typewriter	risinātās	proceed
pret	exact	rakstīt	write (3B)	riskēt	risk (2D)
prei	against, opposite	rakstnieks	writer	rit	tomorrow
preinieks	opposite	raksturot	describe	ritenis	bicycle
priecīties	opponent	rakt	dig (1C)	ritēt	pass (3C)
priekša	rejoice (2A)	rasa	dew	rive	morning
priekšnams	front	rasies	arise, spring up	robeža	grater
problēma	anteroom	(1C)	(1C)	roka	border
produkts	problem	rati	cart	rudzi	hand, arm
prognoze	product	rang!	look!	runāt	rye
prom	forecast	raudāt	cry, weep (3C)	rūpēties	speak (2A)
probūtne	away	raust	rake up (1D)	rūpīgs	take care (3C)
protams	absence	ražotājs	produce (2B)	rupjmaize	careful
proza	of course	ražotne	producer	rupj	rye bread
	prose		production		rough, coarse

pilnīgs	complete	publicēt	publish	rūpica	works, factory
pils	full	puđele	bottle	rūpniecība	industry
pils (f.)	castle, palace	puisīs	fellow, lad	rūpniecisks	industrial
pilsēta	town	puke	flower	sabiedrīks	public
pirāti	pepper	pūlis	crowd	sacepums	pudding, baked
pirāgs, pīrādzīns	pic, pasty	pulks	regiment; crowd	food	food
pircejs	buyer	pulkstenis	o'clock	contest	contest
pirksts	finger	punkts	clock		
pirkt	buy (1B)	purvs	point		
pirmais	first	pusdiena	bog, marsh		
pirms	before	pusdienuot	dinner, lunch		
pirts (f.)	sauna, bath-	puse	dine		
plāns	house	puslalks	half, side		
plašs	thin	pusotra	half-time		
platība	wide, broad	pusstunda	one-and-a-half		
planuļi	space, area	püst	half an hour		
planšas	shelf	radinieks	blow (1D)		
plecs	lungs	rādīt	relative		
plīts	shoulder	rādīties	show (3B)		
plant	stove	ragana	show oneself,		
prasīt	cut, mow (1D)	rags	look		
prast	ask, require (3B)		witch		
	know (how,		horn;		
	language)	(1C)	promontory		
prāvs	(1C)	raiđums	broadcast		
prece	considerable	raizēties	worry (2D)		
precēt	article	rajons	district		
precīzs	marry (3C)	rakstamīšana	typewriter		
pret	exact	rakstīt	write (3B)		
prei	against, opposite	rakstnieks	writer		
preinieks	opposite	raksturot	describe		
priecīties	opponent	rakt	dig (1C)		
priekša	rejoice (2A)	rasa	dew		
priekšnams	front	rasies	arise, spring up		
problēma	anteroom	(1C)	(1C)		
produkts	problem	rati	cart		
prognoze	product	rang!	look!		
prom	forecast	raudāt	cry, weep (3C)		
probūtne	away	raust	rake up (1D)		
protams	absence	ražotājs	produce (2B)		
proza	of course	ražotne	producer		

					SIBLIOTECA GENERAL UNIVERSIDAD POLITÉCNICA

saprast	understand (1C)	senlatvieši	ancient Latvians	skumjš	sad	stallis
saraksts	list	sens	ancient	skurstenis	chimney	starp
sarežīts	complicated	sēpot	gather mush-	skūt	shave (1D)	starpniecība
sarīvēt	grate (2D)	septembris	rooms (2B)	staids	slender, slim	stāties
sarkans	red	sepiņi	September	slānis	layer	stāvēt
saruna	conversation	septiņpadsmit	seven	shaukt	milk (1D)	stāvoklis
sarunātīs	converse (2A)	sērija	seventeen	slēgt	close (1D)	stāvs
sasist	knock together (1A)	sestdiena	series	slavens	famous	stāvveta
saslimt	fall ill (1E)	sešpadsmit	Saturday	sliede	rail	steiga
sastādīt	compose, compile (3B)	sēta	six	slietenis	hut	stingers
sastāvēt	consist (3C)	sev	sixteen	slīkts	bad	stiprs
satiksme	traffic	sevišķs	fence	slīmnieks	patient	strādāt
satrakut	meet (1C)	sezona	for/to oneself	slīmot	be ill	straujš
saukāt	excite (1D)	siera	particular	slims	sick	student
saukt	call, name (3A)	sieviete	season	slips	stoping	studēt
sauļains	call (1D)	silts	wall	sloksnē	strip	studijas
saulē	sunny	siltumnīca	cheese	sludinājums	announcement	stunda
saulgrieži	sun	silķe	wife	smags	heavy	subsidēt
saullēķis	solstice	simt	woman	smaliks	fine	suka
savādība	sunrise	spols	warm	smaržot	smell (2B)	sula
savākties	oddity	sirsniņgs	hothouse	smēķēt	smoke (2D)	summa
savārgēt	gather oneself (1D)	sist	(salted) herring	smiel(ies)	laugh (1A)	suns
savārgīgs	grow sickly (1E)	skaboga	hundred	sand	snow	suvenīrs
savest	original, peculiar	skaidroties	onion	sniegs	offer, hand (1D)	svaigs
savrumāja	bring together (1A)	skaidrs	heartly, sincere	sniegums	performance	svainis
savs	detached house	skaitišķe	strike, hit (1A)	sods	punishment	svārīgs
secināt	one's own	skaitis	splitter	solit	promise (3B)	svārki
segīt	conclude (3A)	skanēt	sour	soma	bag	svars
seja	cover (1D)	skanot	clear up (2B)	soms	Finn	sveicināt!
sekas	face	skapis	clear	sonugīti	Finn-Ugrians	sveiki!
sekot	consequence	skafit	up	spēcīgs	powerful	svešs
sekunde	follow (2B)	skafites	beautiful	spējīgs	able	svētdiena
sen	second	skats	woman	speķis	bacon	svētki
sēne	long ago	skola	number	spēle	play, game	svētdiņi
	mushroom	skriet	sound (3C)	spēlēt	play (2D)	sviestmaize

šausmīgs	awful	te	here	here	trinda	exile	uzlikt
šēit	here	teikt	tell, say (1D)	trīds	deportee	uzmaigs	put on (1B)
šejiene	here	tēja	tea	trispadsmit	three	uznējējs	attentive
šis	this	telefons	telephone	troksnis	noise	uzpēnūums	businessman
šķirne	sort, variety	televīzija	television	trolejbuss	trolley-bus	uzrādīt	business
šķīrt	divide, part	telpa	room, premise,	trukt	be lacking,	uzreiz	enterprise
šķīst	see	telš	space	trūkums	missing (1E)	uzsākt	present, show
šķīvis	plate	temperatūra	temperature	tūkstoš	shortage	uzturēties	(3B)
šnabis	vodka	teniss	tennis	tukss	thousand	uzvalks	at once
šobaldien	this very day	tepatis	right here	tūlīt	empty	uzvarēt	begin (1A)
šobrīd	at this moment	teritorija	territory	tur	immediately	uzzināt	stay (3C)
šodien	today	termometrs	thermometer	turēt	there	uzziņa	conquer, win
šokolāde	chocolate	terps	clothes	turiene	hold (3C)	vācu	(3C)
šonakt	tonight	tētis	dad(dy)	tūrisns	tourism	vādība	find out (3A)
šorit	this morning	tēvocijs	uncle	tūristi	tourist	vezīja	information
šoseja	highway	tēvs	father	turklāt	moreover	vadīt	German
šstats	state	tiežjums	superstition	turp	there, thither	vadonis	leadership,
šūrp	here, hither	ticēt	believe (3C)	turpināt	continue (3A)	vai	management
tā	thus, so	tiesām	really	turpmāk	in future	vaings	lead (3B)
tā kā	since	tiesības	direct	tuvāk	closer	vairāk	leader
taču	however	tik	rights	tuvoties	approach (2B)	vairāki	or; question-word
fad	then	tikai	so	turu	near	vairs	cheek
fādē!	therefore	tikko	only	turuuns	closeness	vajadzēt	garland, crown
fāds	such	tilkpat	just now	ūdeas (f.)	water	vakar	more
tagad	now	tikt	just as much	uguns (f.)	fire	vakars	several
taisit	make (3B)	tilts	arrive, get, be (1C)	ugunsksurs	bonfire	vaidība	(no) longer/mor
taisns	straight; right	tipisks	bridge	un	and	vālgas	need (3C)
tālāk	further	tips	typical	universitāte	university	vālkāt	yesterday
tālrūnis	telephone	tirdzniecība	type	upe	river	valoda	evening
tals	distant	tīrgus	trade	uz	on, to	valoda	government
talū	far	fīrs	market	uzaugt	grow up (1A)	valsts (f.)	humid, moist
tanks	tank	tomāts	pure	uzhērt	strew (1D)	valsts	wear (2A)
tapa	plug	tomēr	tomato	uzbrukums	attack (1C)	varbūt	language
tāpat	likewise	toreiz	still, yet	uzdevums	task	vārdnīca	state, country
tapt	become (1C)	cup	then, at that	uzjautrinājums	amusement	vārds	perhaps
tase	so, then	torte	time	uzjautīt	sprinkle (3B)	warens	dictionary
tātad	trumpet, horn	tradīcija	tart, cake	uzklausīt	listen to (3B)	vārēt	word; name
taure	people, folk	transports	tradition	uzklausīt	snack	variants	mighty, power
tauta	your (sg.,	trānzīts	transport	uzkoda	gate; goal	vārti	be able
tavs	familiar	trauks	transit	uzkrāt	transit	vārtī	version

vasara	summer	vienīgs	only, sole	zaudēt	lose (2D)
vasarnīca	summer-house	vienkāršs	simple	zēķe	stocking, sock
vecaki	parents	vienlaicīgs	simultaneous	zēlis	gold
vecāmāte	grandmother	vienmēr	always	zeme	earth, land
vecs	old	vienošanās	agreement	zemene	strawberry
vecīevs	grandfather	viecpadsmīt	eleven	zemniecība	peasantry
veicināt	promote (3A)	viepareizejs	unique	zemnieks	peasant
veids	form, kind	viens	one; alone	zēns	boy
velkals	shop	vientuļš	single, unmarried	zieds	flower, blossom
velkt	do, perform	viesis	guest	ziema	winter
vējš	(1D)	viesmīls	waiter	Ziemassvētki	Christmas
vēl	wind	viesnīca	hotel	ziemeli	north
vēlāk	still	vietējs	place	zināt	know (3A)
vēlēt	later	vietējums	local	ziņa	news
vēlns	wish (3C)	vilciens	in places		
vēls	devil	vilkt	train		
vēlu	late	vīns	pull (1B)		
vēla	linen, washing	vīna	wine		
(nemt) vērā	(take) into	vīni (m.)	she: his		
	account/	vīnas (f.)	they: her		
	consideration	vīriets	he		
veranda	verandah	vīrs	man		
verdošs	boiling	vīrspace	husband		
vērot	observe (2B)	vīrtīties	surface		
vērsties	turn, appeal (1D)	vīrtīties	on, above		
vērt	open/close	vīrtīties	kitchen		
vērība	(1D)	vīrtīties	move, advance		
vērtīgs	value	vīsāds	(3B)		
vērts	valuable	vīsi	all kinds		
veselība	worth	vīsēldzot	quite, rather		
vest	health	vīsi	lastly		
vēstule	lead (1A)	vīsnaz	everybody		
vēsture	letter	vīspār	at least		
vide	history	vīspirms	generally, at		
videjīs	environment	vīss	all		
vidū	average, middle	vīsta	first of all		
viegls	in the middle	vīsvairāk	all, everything		
vila	light, easy	zakīs	hen		
vien	substance	zāle	most of all		
	only, ever		hare		
	unit		hall; grass		
vienība					

Glossary of grammatical terms

This list of grammatical terms covers the basic terminology used in the language points in this book. The most basic elements of language are:

Sentence: a complete utterance containing a finite verb. Sentences may be *statements*, *questions* or *exclamations*, and the punctuation mark at the end of the sentence – full stop, question-mark or exclamation-mark – will indicate which kind of sentence it is.

Clause: A subsection of a sentence, containing a verb. Clauses may be either *main clauses* or *subordinate clauses*. A main clause is one which can stand alone as a complete utterance; a subordinate clause adds information to the main clause and refers back to or depends on it. Subordinate clauses are very often introduced by *conjunctions* of various kinds, such as 'when', 'if', 'that', 'and', 'or'. Example:

I was thinking that you might be late. (Main clause 'I was thinking'; subordinate clause introduced by *that*.)

Unlike English, Latvian always has a comma to separate a main clause from a subordinate one; for example, the sentence above would be: **Es domāju, ka tu varētu aizkavēties.**

Phrase: any group of words linked together by meaning and function in the sentence. "Train" is a noun, but 'the freight train' is a noun phrase, for example.

Noun: a word that names a thing or living being: for example 'train', 'baby', 'pillow', 'idea'.

Adjective: a word that describes the quality of a thing: for example, 'red', 'old', 'fast'.

Adverb: a word that qualifies an adjective or a verb, such as 'quickly', 'now', 'lately', 'there'.

Pronoun: a word which stands in place of a noun, such as 'he', 'you', 'it'.

Verb: a word which describes an action, process or state, such as 'go', 'exist', 'travel'.

Preposition: a word which comes before a noun to express a relationship in time or space, such as 'before', 'on', 'with'.

Postposition: a word or particle placed after the word it modifies, such as '-ward' in 'homeward'.

Conjunction: A word which joins words, phrases or clauses or otherwise establishes a relationship between these elements, such as 'and', 'or', 'when', 'because'.

Now let us look at the terms used in this book to refer more specifically to Latvian grammar. We will look at the terms under the broad headings of *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs* and *Adjectives*.

Nouns

Nouns in Latvian have two *numbers*: singular and plural. They have two *genders*: masculine and feminine. They are also *declined* (modified) according to *case* by the addition of different suffixes to the stem. Below is a list of the Latvian cases with rough English equivalents of their meanings:

Nominative: the basic uninflected form, the subject of the sentence, the performer of the action of the verb.

Accusative: the object of the action of the verb.

Genitive: indicates possession or having, equivalent to 'of' or the possessive 's in English.

Locative: in, at, on' a place or time.

Dative: 'to, for'; the dative is used with all prepositions in the plural. It is used to indicate the possessor in phrases meaning 'to have'. Latvian grammarians also list the instrumental case ('by means of'), though usually this consists of the preposition *ar* with the noun in the accusative (singular) or dative (plural).

Pronouns

These may be one of the following:

personal ('you, he, him');

demonstrative ('this, that');

interrogative ('which? 'who?');

relative ('which', 'that').

All are declined in the same way as nouns.

Verbs are conjugated (modified) according to *voice*, *person*, *tense*, *mood* and what we might call 'valency' (whether they are positive or negative).

Voice can be either *active* (performing an action) or *passive* (being acted upon).

Person: there are three persons – first ('I', 'we'), second ('you') and third ('he/she/it', 'they'). Each person can have either singular or plural *number*.

Tense in Latvian can be one of the following:

present: describing an action current at the time of the utterance;

future: describing what is anticipated or yet to occur;

past (or *imperfect*): describing something that took place prior to the time of the utterance;

perfect: describing something that 'has taken place';

pluperfect : describing something that 'had taken place'.

Mood: the mood of a verb can be

indicative: describing action that is real;

subjunctive/conditional: describing action that is putative or projected – where we use 'would/should/could' in English, and in clauses starting with 'if';

imperative: commanding or ordering an action;

relative or *reported*: describing an action or state which is said to be the case but which the speaker does not necessarily believe;

deictive: the mood of obligation ('must' in English).

All the verb forms described above are what we call *finite*: that is, they are limited in their function by the clause in which they are used. There are also *non-finite* forms, which are independent of any function in the clause, and they are:

infinitive: the basic dictionary form of the verb, the 'to' form in English;

gerund: the verb used as a noun, such as 'sitting', 'being', 'living' in English.

participles: verbs used in the function of adjectives, to qualify nouns.

They are of four kinds: *present active* (such as 'seeing'); *present passive* (such as 'visible, to be seen'); *past active* ('having seen'); *past passive* ('having been seen'). Participles are used more frequently in Latvian than English.

Adjectives

In Latvian, adjectives are declined like nouns for number and case; they are said to *agree* with the nouns they qualify. Latvian adjectives may be either *definite* ('the black cat') or *indefinite* ('a black cat').

Adjectives are also declined for *degree*. There are three degrees: *positive* (such as 'much'); *comparative* (such as 'more'); *superlative* (such as 'most').

Those *adverbs* that are formed from adjectives are also declined according to degree.

Index of language points

This list contains both grammatical terms and points about expression. The numbers refer to the lessons in which they are covered.

- abstract nouns 7
- accusative case 1, 2
- addressing people 10
- adjectival participle 4-5 10
- adjectives 1, 14
- adverbs 1, 13
- agent nouns 7, 9
- 'as ... as possible' 19
- asking questions 1
- asking the way 3, 5
- basic verb forms 1
- 'becoming' verbs 12
- being and having 1
- the body 10
- broadcasting 17
- business terms 11
- buying tickets 8
- clothes 20
- colours 20
- commands 2
- comparisons 4, 13
- compound nouns 4
- conditional verbs 4
- conjunctions 15
- cooking 14
- countries and nationalities 12
- culture 16
- dative case 1, 2
- days of the week 6
- definiteness 2
- demonstrative adjectives 2
- diminutives 4, 10
- directions 3, 5
- double negation 5
- eating out 11
- expressing requests: 'please' and 'thank you' 1
- feminine gender 1, 3
- festivals 7, 16
- food 3, 11, 14
- future tense 4, 8, 10
- gender 1, 13
- genitive case 1, 2, 19
- geography 5
- gerunds 20
- going to a restaurant 11
- greetings 1
- group numbers 9
- 'have' 2
- health 10
- 'here' and 'there' 3, 20
- the home 9
- humour 10
- 'if' 4
- impersonal verbs 5, 17
- indirect statements 15
- infinitive form of the verb 6
- inhabitants of places 11
- 'in order to' 5
- instrumental case 1
- 'is not' 5
- lai (particle) 5
- language 20
- 'let's' 1
- letter r 16
- letter-writing 15, 18
- locative case 1
- maps 5
- masculine gender 1, 4
- media 17
- money 8
- months and dates 6
- music 16
- 'must' 5
- 'need' 15
- negating participles 12
- negative verbs 2, 8
- nevis (particle) 9
- newspapers 17
- noun cases 1
- numbers 2, 3, 9, 16
- omission of the subject 5, 7, 15
- 'ought' 15
- pa- prefix 14
- participles 7, 8, 10, 13, 15
- passive voice 11
- past tense 4
- perfect tense 2
- personal pronouns 1
- place-names 8
- 'plenty of' 18
- plural nouns 1, 3
- plural pronouns 16
- possession 11
- possibility 19
- prefixes 7, 14
- prepositions 2, 3, 5, 15
- present continuous tense 9
- present participle 13, 18
- proverbs 13
- public transport 8
- reflexive verbs 5, 7, 8, 10, 20
- relative mood 15
- reported speech 15
- restaurant food 11
- road travel 8
- shops and shopping 4
- 'should' 4
- singular and plural nouns 1
- 'someone', 'something' 3
- sound changes 3
- sport 12
- subjectless clauses 7
- subjunctive verbs 4
- superlative of adjective 12
- telling the time 3
- '(the fact) that' 4, 9
- 'there is not' 4
- 'this', 'that' 2
- time expressions 5, 6
- timetables 8
- the town 2
- travel 8, 15
- using numbers 9
- verb tenses 9
- vocative case 1
- the weather 6
- word formation 11
- word order 4
- 'would' 4
- writing addresses 15
- writing to a friend 15, 18